

# MODERN PERSIAN

John Mace

First printed 1962 Corrected edition 1971 This impression 1973

Copyright © 1962, 1971 The English Universities Press Ltd

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

This volume is published in the U.S.A. by David McKay Company Inc., **75**0 Third Avenue, New York N.Y. 10017

ISBN 0 340 05807 2

### **PREFACE**

Persian is an Indo-European language, that is, it is related to the tongues spoken in Western Europe. As a result of the spread of Islam after the death of the Prophet, many Arabic words were introduced into Persian, which came to be written with the Arabic alphabet; yet in its grammatical structure and its basic vocabulary Persian remains Indo-European, hence quite unlike Arabic.

Persian is therefore an easy language for us to learn to speak; at first the writing and reading of it seem difficult, but with the right approach we can learn even this quickly. This book attempts to teach the basis of the reading and writing, with the minimum of grammar, in the first dozen lessons; thereafter the grammar and idiom of the language can be explored more fully. A transliteration in Roman characters is given for the first few appearances of every word, phrase or sentence, but you should try as soon as you can to pick out the words direct from the Persian script, reading them several times over to accustom your eye to the forms. Plenty of practice is given in this, in the early lessons of the book. The book is in three main parts— Alphabet, Grammar, and Vocabulary-building, and in addition it has a Key to the exercises, an Index, and vocabularies each way.

The book is called Teach Yourself *Modern Persian*; this is important. Arabic forms of speech and orthography do appear in everyday Persian talking and writing, and where they do we have mentioned them; but there is no more need

for the student of Modern Persian to learn Arabic than there is for the person learning, say, French to know Latin first. I do not speak, understand, read, or write Arabic beyond the half-dozen or so examples of it which appear in this book.

You ought to enjoy learning Persian—Iran is a fascinating country, unique in her long history of civilisation and art. Iran is being re-discovered by thousands of English-speaking people—British and American—and it is their need to understand and be understood among this friendly and hospitable people that has prompted the writing of this book.

I should like to take this opportunity of thanking Professor Savory, of the University of Toronto, and Mr. Leonard Cutts, the Editor-in-Chief, for their many helpful suggestions on the text.

I am also indebted to Messrs. Bruno Cassirer, of Oxford, for their kind permission to reproduce the miniatures on pp. 93 and 117, and to the Trustees of the British Museum for allowing me to reproduce drawings of the archaeological fragments on pp. 39, 79, and 201.

JOHN MACE.

Note: Iran is the country; Iranian the nationality; Persian the national language, originally the tongue of Fars in the south of Iran. In English Persia is used to mean Iran, but this is, really, inaccurate.

## **CONTENTS**

										PAGE
Pref	ace .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	v
PAR	T ONE.—A	lphal	oet	•	•	•	•	•	•	3
LESSO	ч									
I.	$\hat{a}$ , $b$ , $n$	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	3
2.	s, sh	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	6
3.	m, $d$	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	9
4.	î.	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	12
5.	r, Dumm	y alef,	t	•	•	•	•	•	•,	15
6.	û, v, ch, z	, Ézâj	é	•	•	•	•	•	•	18
7.	h, Final -	é, p	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	22
-	k, g, l	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	25
	kh, khâ, f	Glo	ttal	Stop.	j.	•	•	•	•	28
10.	gh. Numl						•	•	•	32
II.	Arabic let			t, and	h. I	Persian	zh	•	•	34
Dan	r Two.—C								_	43
				Doot	Tone	•	•	•	•	• -
12.	Personal 1		uns.	Past	rens	· ·	•	•	•	43
	وز —Text	-	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	47
13.	Negatives				-					50
13a.	Questions	. Pos	itive	e and I	Negat	ive A	nswers	s. Tex	it.	55
14.	Plurals.	Pronu	ncia	tion.	These	, Tho.	s <i>e</i>	•	•	60
14a.	Text. Pro	esent	of to	be. F	ast a	nd Pr	esent	of to I	iave	68
15.	Indefinite	Suffi	x. <i>I</i>	Iamzé	•	•	•	•	•	74
15a.	Possessive	e Pror	oun	Suffix	ces.	Khod.	Text			
	بانهای شهر	خيا	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	80
16.	Ézâfé: R	evisio	n			•	•	•		85
16a.	Present T	ense.	Pro	nuncia	ation.	Suffi	x to b	e. Te	ĸt.	90
17.	Prepositio		•	`.	•	•	•	•		97
17a.	Prefix mi-	. Vei	bs i	n - <i>kh</i>	Тех	ct(4	، (فصل	فصول		101
18.	Verbs in -								as.	105
18a.	Numbers						_	•		109

<b>v</b> iii	Contents

LESSON	v v		PAGE
19.	Subjunctive. Imperative. Pronoun Suffixes		. 112
19a.	Questions. Indirect Speech. Verbs in -stan.	Text	. 118
20.	Can and want to	•	. 125
20a.	To ask. Verbs in -dan. Compound Verbs.	<b>Text</b>	. 128
21.	Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. No. 11-20, Cardinal and Ordinal	umber •	s . 134
21a.	Relative. Verbs in -f Expressions. Polite S	Speech	ι.
	صحبت در تلفن ـــText	•	. 139
<b>2</b> 2.	Compound Verbs. Subjunctive of to be. R	elative	146
<b>2</b> 2 <b>a</b> .	-ing translated, Imperfect, Present Participles in -ordan	. Verb	s . 151
<b>2</b> 3.	Relative. Polite Speech. Text کردن در ایران— Relative. Polite Speech.	مسافرت	. 155
<b>2</b> 3a.	Perfect Tenses. Verbs followed by the Subju Conjunctions and Prepositions	nctive	. 161
24.	Khod. Past Participle. Must and may. Col. Pronunciation	lloquia •	.l . 168
<b>2</b> 4a.	Conjunctions followed by the Subjunctive. F Numbers over 20, Cardinal and Ordinal. نامنه و استخوان		
<b>2</b> 5.	Short and Long Infinitives, Impersonal Expre Future Tense. Thou. Colloquial Pronunc Verbs in -âsh Test Paper—Verbs .		,
PART	THREE.—Words		. 197
<b>2</b> 6.	Wordbuilding, Suffixes. Colloquial Pronunci	ation	-
	Wordbuilding, Causative Verbs. Time. Ca		•
<b>2</b> 7.	Text—عيد نوروز Wordbuilding, Suffixes. Arabic Adverbs. pound Nouns and Adjectives. ham, all.	Com	
	Arabic Plurals. Writing of Short Vowels	•	. 208
•	to Exercises	•	. 216
Voca	bularies: Persian-English		. 239
	English-Persian	•	. 252
Inde	x	•	. 264

## PART ONE

Alphabet الف با

### LESSON 1

Persian is written with the Arabic alphabet, slightly modified. We write Persian in the opposite direction to English, that is, not from left to right but from right to left. Persian books begin at what to us would be the back of the book.

### 1 â T

The Persian a, long a, is a long open sound, halfway between the a in bar, calm, dark, and the a in wall, talk, ball. It is an a with a touch of o in it.

At the beginning of a word it is written

T

with the long sign over it.

In the middle or at the end of a word it is written without the long sign:

!.

The Persian b is pronounced exactly as is b in English. When it begins a word, it is written

ڊ

(to the ← left) and is joined from there to the next letter, thus:

$$(up \mathbf{1}) \mathbf{1} \cdot b\hat{a} = with$$

Remember that the line of writing starts here  $\neg$ , on the extreme *right* of the page. The a must be struck upwards immediately from the b thus:

Practise a whole line of it:

has a longer and fuller form than the joined b, which is about one-third of the length. Practise:

(from here) آب (water) âb آب آب آب آب یا آب (with water) bâ âb) با آب یا آب نه تن

Like  $\psi$  b, the Persian n has a short form used at the beginning or in the middle of a word, i, and a full form i (deeper, rounder than the flat  $\psi$  b), used at the end of a word.

A few more words:

(from here)

(You will recall that the initial long alef is always written with the long sign over it, thus 7, and that it cannot be joined to the letter following it. This is why, in the last two words, the final  $\circ$  n appears separate, and in the first word the alef has its long sign.)

More practice. Follow the arrows:

(from here)

Now a whole phrase:

با آن آب (with that water) با آن آب A useful word at this stage is

(a builder) bannâ بنا

because it shows us that the short forms of b, and n; are identical except for the position of the dot, and also it shows us that short vowels (in this case a, like the a in hat, bat, cat in English) are not written. We only write long vowels in Persian.

### Practise:

### VOCABULARY

that آن ân water آب âb with با bâ builder بنا bannd bread نان nân father, "Daddy" بابا bâbâ

### Exercises

### I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

- II. Translate and write out a line of each of these, pronouncing as you write:
  - (a) that bread, (b) that water, (c) that builder,
  - (d) with bread, (e) with water.
- III. Read your Persian for Ex. II aloud.
- IV. Read aloud (without translating):

(there is no word for "the" in Persian) با بنا (c)

(d) آب یا نان

V. Translate Ex. IV into English.

### LESSON 2

Persian s has a long and a short form, used in the same way as the long and short b and n:

and s with three dots over it gives us sh:

Practise:

(from here)

س س س س س س س س س س write it fast س س س س ش ش ش ش ش ش ش ش ش ش اس س اسا سا سا شا شا شا شا سا شا سا آش آش آش آش آش آش آش انن آت stew with bread "'

s-n looks like one letter: it is two. The n-dot tells us that:

سن سن سن سن سن اسن من age) senn

The short vowel e is of course not written.

Practise:

(short vowel a not written) " enough " bas بس بس

The double — of s and sh are tedious to write, so most Persian people leave out the "teeth", as they are called, and write for s not — and — but — and —. This is a long sweeping letter, quite easy to make and easy to read.

Practise writing, pronouncing as you go:

The syllable -esh forms a very valuable suffix, meaning his, her, or its; it is added to nouns ending in a consonant.

We have already had the nouns (read them aloud):

which all end in consonants. Thus we make of them

Similarly, the suffix is -eshan gives us the possessive their: it is also added to nouns ending in a consonant. Read, copy, and pronounce:

نانشان (their bread) nâneshân نانشان

Do a whole line of this word, pronouncing as you write:

Now more words:

(meaning?) âbeshân آئان آبشان get the dots right آبشان (their stew) asheshan آشفان آشفان رنان سنشان senneshan نشان سنشان

Make your s's and sh's long sweeps:

سنان آشان سنان آشان

#### VOCABULARY

stew آش or آش dsh senn سن or سن bas بس or بس bas esh ش or ش or ش -esh eshan شان or شان -eshan

### Exercises

I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

- س بس *bas* بس بس (a)
- (b) بی بی bas بی بی (b)

- II. Translate and write, pronouncing as you write:
  - (a) his bread. (b) their bread. (c) stew with bread.
  - (d) her age.
- III. Read aloud your Persian for Ex. II.
- IV. Read aloud (without translating):
  - (a) آشش آشش آشش آشش آشش آشش آش (b) نانشان نانشان نانشان نانشان نانشان نانشان نانشان نانش آبش آبش آبش آبش آبش آب با نانش آب با نانش آب با نانش آب با نانش

  - V. Translate Ex. IV into English.

### LESSON 3

m in Persian has two forms, a short and a full one:

As in the case of b, b, a, and a s-sh b, the shortened form is used when a letter follows the m, the long form when m is the final letter of the word.

Practise short m:

Don't make a long sweep between the m and the  $\hat{a}$ , or it will be read as an s (m-s- $\hat{a}$ ). Keep the joining short in Persian.

Again, saying it as you write:

You will notice two things about  $m \rightarrow$  in the middle of a word:

- (a) It is written anti-clockwise 🕡 . 😽
- (b) We approach the m from the top:  $\fill$ . Get into the habit of writing the bead of the  $\fill$  or  $\fill$  in this fashion; do not write it clockwise, as certain other letters, which we shall deal with later, are always written clockwise, and confusion will arise if you do not write m carefully and correctly.

Now write shom  $\hat{a}$  with a sweeping  $sh : \vdash$  (the short o is unwritten)  $\vdash \vdash \vdash$ .

Now write the word for "I":

من (I) man من من من الله "I with you".

Now long, final m:

شام (dinner) shâm شام شام "dinner with stew".

A very useful suffix is -am -- (short a unwritten), meaning "my":

(as the s is anti-clockwise, f ab-am the is turned round (my water).

Practise:

--am "my" becomes plural الله --emân "our":

abeman آعان abam آ

Practise:

יו של '' our bread '' nânemân ناخان ناغان ناغان شام "my dinner" shâmam شام شام (meaning?) sennam في من الم

§ Remember to hold on to the double letter: sen-nam.

D. Persian d has only one form; it is not joined to the left, i.e. to the letter following it. In this respect it is like alef 1.

a د

Practise it. Make the hook fairly sharp, and the whole letter resting on the line of writing:

(from here)

آمد (short a not written) "he came" amad ما بد بد بد بد (meaning "bad" in English) bad بد دم (o like oo in foot) " tail " dom دم دمث its tail " domesh دمث

### VOCABULARY

we, us h ma you شما shoma man من I. me bad u bad tail es dom

he came and amad my (suffix) -am our (suffix) مان -emân name نام name shâm شام shâm

#### Exercises

I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

- (a) آمد آمد بنا آمد بنا آمد بنا آمد
- II. Translate and write out, pronouncing as you write:
  - (a) its tail. (b) her name. (c) our dinner. (d) their bread. (e) my dinner. (f) our water.
- III. Read aloud your Persian for Ex. II.
- IV. Read aloud (without translating):
  - بنا با آن آب آمد (a) بنا یا آن آب آمد
  - (a) بيا با ال اب المد (b) من منش منان منشان (c) أنم آبم آبم آبم آبم آبش آبش آبش آبش آبان آبمان (d) نامش نامش نامش نامشان شامان شاما
  - V. Translate into English Ex. IV.

### LESSON 4

The long î or ee sound heard in bean, lean, is written in Persian:

short (i.e. not at the end of a word) ي long (i.e. at the end of a word)

There is a rule which forbids the letter \* f or ee to begin a word in writing: therefore if a word begins with the sound ee the letter \* is introduced, preceded by \ alef. This \ alef is mute. It serves merely as a "prop", to announce that the word is beginning with a vowel.

That is why, when alef is actually sounded,  $\mathcal{A}$ , at the beginning of a word we take care to mark it long:  $\mathcal{I}$ . This tells us that the alef is not merely an introducing letter for another vowel, but a long vowel in its own right. Compare:

where the a T is sounded, with

where the i or ee is the actual vowel sounded, the alef being a mere dummy, an orthographic convention.

Practise, saying it as you write it:

Do not confuse <u>ee</u> with <u>b</u>. B has one dot beneath it, ee has two. Note that the long form of ee s has no dots at all.

2 ce is also used for the sound of the English consonant y, as in year, yoke, you, and your. When 2 is used in this

manner, as a consonant, it needs no alef to introduce it at the beginning of a word: it is only the vocalic which must be so introduced.

Practise:

Look now at the Persian word for "he comes", mî-âyad:

$$dy \hat{a} \hat{i} m$$
 (reading from the  $m$  leftwards)

The a m we know from the last lesson. The first a is e. The alef in the middle of the word is a, a long open sound halfway between the a in bar, calm, dark and the a in walk, talk, ball.

The second  $\underline{\underline{}}$  is a consonant,  $\underline{\underline{}}$ . After it is pronounced a short  $\underline{\underline{}}$ , not written, and lastly a  $\underline{\underline{}}$ .

Similarly : ميام mî-âyam " I come ".

Practise "the builder came".

and "the builder comes":

The letter : b gives us a useful preposition-prefix. It means "to".

### Practise:

When the *i be*-prefix is attached to a word beginning with long *alef*, the resulting combination is still read as two syllables.

Pronounce:

بآب be-âb (two syllables) = to the water

Write:

بآب بآن بآب بآن بآن آب بآب بآن آب

When the ! be- is prefixed to a word beginning with another vowel introduced by a dummy alef! (in words like اين in, for example) the ! is written straight on to the alef, and the whole word is read with be- as quite a distinct syllable.

Pronounce: باین

be-în (two syllables) = to this

### Vocabulary

this این fn to, towards (prefix) به beor يا ya I come ميايم mî-dyam he/she/it comes ميايد mf-dyad

Practise:

### Exercises

I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

(e) ميايم ميايم

- II. Translate and write, pronouncing as you write:
  - (a) I am coming (= I come). (b) he is coming
- III. Read aloud your Persian for Ex. II.

IV. Read, without translating:

بآن آب میایم	بآن آب میایم	(a)
باین آب میآید	باین آب میاید	(b)
آب با این آش	آب با این آش	(c)
آن بنا آمد	ان بنا مباید	(d)

V. Translate Ex. IV.

#### LESSON 5

Persian r is written . In writing it is similar to ! alef and s d because it is not joined to the letter following it.

It is pronounced with a strong roll of the tongue, like a Scots r.

Practise, following the arrow:

### VOCABULARY

(1) door در dar
(2) in
man مرد mard
has, he has دارد darad
Iran, Persia ایران fran

I have دارم dâram head مر sar cold مرد sard (adjective) Iranian, Persian ایرانی trans

Alef at the beginning of a word is written:

- (a)  $^{\dagger}$  to signify a, long a.
- (b) I as a mute letter introducing any vowel.

You will remember how in the word اين in, the alef was a pure orthographic convention. In the same way the word asb or asp " a horse"

begins with an unwritten short vowel a. The alef is there to introduce this initial vowel. Do not read the alef itself as a—the a is not written, but introduced by the dummy I alef.

Practise:

اسب اسب اسب اسب اسب اسب

This man has a horse:

în mard asb dârad این مرد اسب دارد

(the VERB is usually last word in a Persian sentence).

That man is coming on horseback ("with a horse"):

an mard ba asb mayad آن مرد با اسب ميايد

تtت

that it has two dots above the letter instead of one below it. The short and long form are used just as you have learned to use long and short forms of:

ب ب b د ن n م م

Practise:

 $\dot{v}$ 

### VOCABULARY

as far as, until تا is, he/she/it is معنا ast he/she/it is not, isn't نيست nsst

Practise:

horse اسب اسب اسب اسب until تا تا تا

This is a horse:

in asb ast این اسب است

That isn't a horse:

an asb nist آن الله نيست (the verb comes last)

; na-. The prefix; na- (short a not written), joined to a verb beginning with a consonant, makes the verb negative:

> ديدم dîdam I saw نديدم nadîdam I did not see mîâyam I am coming namîâyam I am not coming

Before a verb beginning with a vowel, the prefix is written ن nay- and pronounced like "nigh" in English:

âmad he came

nayâmad he did not come نامد

Notice that the long sign over the alef is dropped here. Before going any further, make sure now that you know all the vocabulary we have had to date, by looking back at all the previous lessons. Then check that you know the use of the prefixes

. be- to (check its use before alef) i na- + consonant) makes verbs negative: " nay- + vowel \(\) " do not, does not, did not " and of the suffixes

esh his, her, its من ش -esh his, her, its من ش -eshân their -am my oi -emân our added to nouns which

### EXERCISES

### I. Write, pronouncing:

- (a) من اسب دارم man asb dâram من اسب دارم (b) من اسب دیدم man asb dîdam من اسب دیدم (c) این اسب ایرانی نیست în asb îrânî nîst این اسب ایرانی نیست

(d) آن در است an dar ast آن در است

(e) این نان بد است in nân bad ast این نان بد است

من با شا تا دم در میایم من با شا تا دم در میایم (f)

man bâ shomâ tâ dam -é dar mîâyam

(g) آب سرد است db sard ast آب سرد است

- II. Translate, and write, pronouncing as you write:
  - (a) My dinner is cold.(b) This bread is bad.(c) That man isn't Iranian.(d) There is no water (= water isn't).
- III. Translate into English Ex. I.
- IV. Read aloud your Persian for Ex. II.

#### LESSON 6

- . The Persian letter , has two values:
  - (a) long vowel: , a like oo in boot.

 $\delta$  like o in pole, but a pure vowel.

(b) consonant: v as in every.

When  $\mathfrak{s}$  is a long vowel  $\mathfrak{A}$  or  $\mathfrak{d}$  and begins a word, of course it must be introduced with a dummy  $\mathfrak{l}$  alef. When a consonant it can be written as first letter of a word. There is one exception to this general rule: the word  $\mathfrak{s}$  and " is pronounced either va or  $\mathfrak{d}$ , and is always spelt without alef. Of the two pronunciations va is far more common than  $\mathfrak{d}$ .

a,  $\delta$ , v is not joined to the letter following it. It has no short form.

Practise:

(from here)

د د و و و و و و

Distinguish between a, r, a, d, and  $a-\delta-v$ .

Practise:

ر ر ر ددد و و و ر دو ر دو

#### VOCABULARY

and  $\begin{cases} va \\ \delta \end{cases}$  face  $va \\ rac{a}{b}$  he, she  $va \\ a$ 

two دو dô I run میدوم mîdavam he/she/it runs میدود mîdavad friend میدود

Fersian ch is pronounced like our ch in church. It has a long and a short form.

Practise, following the arrows:

start it here

If we put a dot over  $\int r$  we get  $\int z$  like our z in zoo: woman  $\partial z$   $\partial z$   $\partial z$  (short  $\partial z$ ); thief  $\partial z$ 

A very useful feature in Persian is one called the <code>ézâfé</code>. This is originally an Arabic word meaning "addition", and it is a short vowel pronounced like é in the French "café". We shall transcribe the <code>ézâfé</code> as é: this is to show that it is short, clipped, like é in French. The <code>ézâfé</code> is NEVER stressed.

This ezâfé has three possible meanings:

(a) It can mean "belonging to":

the horse of the man (i.e. the man's horse)

(b) It can join a noun to an adjective qualifying that noun (the noun always comes first, as in French):

mard-é-îrânî مرد ایرانی an Iranian man, the Iranian man (c) It can show that the words before and after the *ezafé* are in apposition to one another:

مرد دوستم mard-é-dûstam مرد دوستم the man, my friend . . .

If the word before the  $\dot{e}z\hat{a}f\dot{e}$  ends in a consonant, as in the examples (a), (b), and (c) above, the  $\dot{e}z\hat{a}f\dot{e}$  is not written; it has to be read into the text.

If the word before the  $\ell z \hat{a} f \ell$  ends in one of the long vowels  $|\hat{a}|$  or  $\hat{u} - \hat{o}$ , the  $\ell z \hat{a} f \ell$  is written  $\hat{u}$  and is pronounced  $-y \ell$ :

û-yé or وي û-yé اي

- e.g. (a) possession: rû-yé-mard روی مرد the face of the man, the man's face
  - (b) adjective : bannâ-yê-îrânî بناى ايرانى the/an Iranian builder
  - (c) apposition : bannâ-yé-dûstam بناى دوستم the builder, my friend . . .

If the noun before the \(\ell z \hat{a} f \ell \) ends in the long vowel

î-ee ي

the  $\ell z \hat{a} f \ell$  is not written, but is pronounced with the same y-glide as in the case of  $\hat{a}$ -y $\ell$  and  $\hat{u}$ -y $\ell$  above:  $\hat{i}$ -y $\ell$ .

ایرانی دوستم Thus: îrânî-yé-dûstam

the Persian, my friend . . .

Practise (a) unwritten ézâfé, pronounced é, after consonantal nouns :

مرد بد مرد بد (meaning?) mard-é-bad مرد بد اسب ایرانی a Persian horse asb-é-îrânî اسب ایرانی زن بنا الله the builder's wife zan-é-bannâ زن بنا الله وستان our friend's horse asb-é-dûstemân اسب دوستان

(b) ézâfé written  $\omega$  after 1 and  $\omega$ , and pronounced  $\hat{a}$ -yé and  $\hat{u}$ -yé and  $\omega$ -yé:

روى مرد the man's face rû-yé-mard بناى ايرانى the Iranian builder bannâ-yé-îrânî

- (c) ézâfé unwritten after ن itself, and pronounced î-yé : the Persian, my friend . . . îrânî-yé-dûstam Notice the difference between :
  - (a) The Persian, my friend, came ايراني دوسم آمد (rânî-yé-dûstam âmad

and

- (b) The Persian is my friend ايراني دوستم احت المناقبة ا
- In (a) the two nouns درس and ايران, îrânî and dûstam, are linked together by the ézâfé, as they agree, or are (grammatically speaking) in apposition.
- In (b), although the two words اراف îrânî and دوستم dûstam are written as in (i), there is no ézâfé.

Again, distinguish in reading between

(a) I have cold water âb-ê-sard dâram آب سرد دارم and (b) the water is cold âb sard ast آب سرد است where in (a) and (b) سرد and سرد show no distinction, yet in (a) we have a noun-adjective combination (cold water) linked with an êzâfê, and in (b) we have the verb to be separating the two words in English: the water is cold.

The *ezâfe* is a most important and useful particle in Persian.

### VOCABULARY

two دو do
woman د zan
from زن zan
from از az
gold زر zar
thief د dozd
mother مادر mâdar
he/she runs ميدود

#### EXERCISES

I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

آب سرد دارم ab-e-sard daram آب سرد دارم (a)

(b) آن اسب بد نیت an asb bad nist آن اسب بد نیت

(c) چرا آمد؟ ? cherâ âmad چرا آمد

(d) نام این اسب رخش رست نام این اسب رخش است

nâm-é-în asb Rakhsh ast

dûst-é-în mard âmad مرد آمد (e)

- II. Translate and write:
  - (a) This man is a thief. (b) I came with my friend's horse. (c) I saw the face of that man. (d) This man's wife is not Iranian. (e) I am coming to Iran.
- III. Translate Ex. I.
- IV. Read aloud your Persian for Ex. II.

### LESSON 7

- H. Persian h has several possible forms:
  - (a) At the beginning of a word it is written

A 23 62 2' A

Practise:

هر هر هر هر هر هر هر

(b) In the middle of words it is written either (a rare form) 4 2 2 4

Practise:

(a far more frequent form) + 2 1. 4.

(c) At the end of a word, h (which as a consonant is always sounded) appears as:

(a rare form in handwriting, 4 4 4 4 & & but common in print)

or

(in handwriting but never a a a in print)

Practise writing both ways:

" the bottom, the end " tah من or عن

- (d) Standing alone, h is written s or •:
  - مالا ماه (2) month mâh مالا ماه

A final or lone h,  $\bullet$  or  $\bullet$  is used also to indicate a short vowel,  $\ell$ , or occasionally a, at the end of a word. This is the only case of a short vowel being written in Persian:

This h-vowel is not used to indicate the  $\ell z \hat{a} f \ell$ . We shall, however, use the same  $\ell$  letter to transliterate it, as it is exactly the same sound as the  $\ell z \hat{a} f \ell$ .

### VOCABULARY

thing جيز chiz
fish مامى mâhî
glass منيشه / منيث shîshê
ten ه dah
moon, month ماه mâh
I give ميدهم mîdeham

After a short vowel-h the  $\dot{e}z\hat{a}f\dot{e}$  sounds like  $\dot{e}y\dot{e}$ . It is not written:

shîshéyé dar ثيث در the glass (i.e. window) of the door

P in Persian is written; (short) and  $\varphi$  (long). It belongs to the b-family, of which we now know

b ب

3 = t

in its full form)

*p* پ پ

As you see, it is important to get the dots right. P has three dots below it  $\varphi \varphi$ . Do not confuse it with  $\varphi \varphi ch$ .

### VOCABULARY

screw بيج pich hand دست dast on the right hand

dast-é-rast دست راست

on the left hand

dast-é-chap دست چپ

then بي pas
the right foot

pa-yé-râst پای راست pd-yé-chap پای چپ the left foot eye بدر cheshm
father بدر pedar
right-hand بدر râst
left-hand جب chap
foot به pâ
what اجم جيز (ché chîz
wool جمين pashm
brother برادر barâdar
Tehran تهران

### Practise:

این چیز پیچ است get the dots right این چیز پیچ است این چیز پیچ است این ماه سرد است در این شهر هر چیز بد است baar în shahr har chîz bad ast

### EXERCISES

I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

(a) در دست چپ مادرم و در دست راست پدرم است

dar dast-é-chap mâdaram va dar dast-é-râst pedaram ast

be-shomâ har chîz mîdéham بشيا هر چيز ميدهم (b)

(c) برادرمان هر ماه بشهر میاید

barâdaremân har mâh be-shahr mîâyad

- II. Translate and write out:
  - (a) I saw all three of (از) you in town.
  - (b) The door is on the left.
  - (c) In my glass there is no water (= water isn't).
  - (d) Every glass has water (in it).
- III. Translate Ex. I.
- IV. Read aloud your Persian for Ex. II.

### LESSON 8

Persian k has a short form  $\zeta$  and full forms:

(printed, when preceded by a joined letter)

의 (printed, when alone)

It is handwritten and k

Hard Persian g (as in English gun) is written like k but with a double headstroke f instead of a single one:

(The full form is often  $\geq$  in print. The  $\cdot$  is not important and is never written in handwriting.)

### Practise:

### L. Persian l is similar to $\leq k$ :

Two differences: (a) there is no headstroke  $\overline{\phantom{a}}$ ; (b) J fullform l is deeper than full-form  $k \not J$ .

### Practise:

Special joinings for these new letters:

(a)  $k-\hat{a}$  and  $g-\hat{a}$  are thus:

WRITTEN	PRINTED		
kâ 💪 🛂 🔥	کا		
ga & &	5		
(b) <i>l-â</i> is thus:			
la 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	y or y		
(c) k-l and g-l:			
الله يم الله يم الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	کا کل		
نظم الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	گل گل		
(d) $k$ - $l$ - $\hat{a}$ and $g$ - $l$ - $\hat{a}$ :			
klå 🔏 💃 🎉	كلا		
glâ 🌿 💆	گلا		

I d is easily distinguishable from l short l because short l joins to the next letter, whereas l d does not, and from l long l because long l has the d final flourish to it, which l has not.

### Practise:

### VOCABULARY

somebody کسی kasî
never مرگز hargez
butter مرگز earm
bridge کره pol
work کاد kar
pear کار kar
pear کلای golâbî
no, not a, none میچ hich
principal, head, supreme
(adjective) که kasî

everybody هر کس harkas
did, he did کرد kard
plaster گر gach
yes بله balé
money بول بولا
place بولا پولا
place پولا پولا
مالا پولا پولا

### EXERCISES

### I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

- او از کار آمد  $\hat{u}$  az-kâr âmad او از کار آمد (a)
- (b) این گل در آب است in gol dar âb ast این گل در آب است
- harkas hâ ast be-shahr mîâyad هركس با اسب بشهر ميايد (c)
  - یول ندارم  $p\hat{u}l \ nad\hat{a}ram$  یول ندارم (d)

### II. Translate:

- (a) What am I giving him?
- (b) I am giving him bread and butter.
- (c) Is he coming to work? Yes, he is coming.
- (d) Has he money? No, but he has work.

### III. Translate Ex. I.

IV. Read aloud your answers to Ex. II.

### LESSON 9

 $\dot{c} kh \doteq$ . Persian kh, like the sound of ch in the Scots word loch or the German ach, has a short form  $\doteq$  and a full form  $\dot{c}$ . It is one of the ch-family. Be careful not to confuse  $\dot{c} \dot{c} kh$  with  $\dot{c} ch$ .

Practise:

In the written combination  $ivert kh-v-\hat{a}$  the v is silent in modern Persian, hence we pronounce only  $kh\hat{a}$ :

خوا 
$$= kh\hat{a}$$

Write, pronouncing as you write:

خواب خواب خواب خواب خواب خواب خواب میخوام (I sleep) mîkhâbam میخوام میخوام خواهش خواهش خواهش خواهش خواهش خواست خواست خواست خواست خواست خواست خواست

Don't confuse ightharpoonup khâb, sleep (where the ightharpoonup is silent and the following <math>
ightharpoonup is sounded, <math>
ightharpoonup is khûb, good, where the ightharpoonup is sounded.

in full and in short form. Full is long and flat like b but it has a ring at its beginning, which b has not.

Practise:

The letter "'ain"?.

This letter is used in Persian to mark a break in the flow of speech, or, technically speaking, a glottal stop. If we pronounce "bottle" as it is pronounced in the Cockney dialect, we say "bo'l". The "'" represents here a glottal stop, a catch in the breath.

Those who speak German need only to think of their Kehlkopfverschlusslaut in such expressions as die Arbeit, geeignet, and der Beamte.

- (a) In the middle of a word, 'ain is written (a triangle):

  " afterwards " ba'ad بعد
  " meaning " ma'ani معن
- (b) Alone, it is written 2
- (c) At the beginning of a word, it is written (the is a consonant):

" holiday " 'êid عيد (êi as in weight)

(d) At the end of a word it is written Practise:

For another member of the  $j \in ch$ -kh family is  $j \in j$ , pronounced like our j in jewel.

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
\overline{c} & \overline{c} & ch \\
\overline{c} & \overline{c} & kh \\
\overline{c} & \overline{c} & j
\end{array}$$

Do not confuse j with j kh. The place of the dot is the only difference in writing.

Do not confuse the sound of j with  $\mathcal{L}_g$ . j is soft, g is hard.

#### VOCABULARY

took, he took گرفت gereft good خوب khûb request خواهش fardû sleep فردا khûb holiday خواب 'eid total, sum جم jam' meaning معنى ma'ant

seven مفت haft
I sleep ميخوابم mikhabam
(he) wanted خواست khast
very خيل khêill
afterwards معد ba'ad
Friday معد jom'ê
place بنة

### Exercises

- I. Write, pronouncing as you write:
  - (a) من خواهش دارم man khâhesh dâram من خواهش دارم
    - (b) فردا جمم است fardd jom'é ast فردا جمم است
    - in mard khêilî khûb ast اين مرد خيلي خوب است (c)
      - în jâ-yé-khûb ast این جای خوب است (d)
  - jam'-é-sé o chahâr haft ast سه و چهار هفت است (e)

## II. Translate:

(a) I sleep well (= good).(b) That place is bad.(c) What (thing) has he in his (omit) hand? (d) The water is not warm.

- III. Translate Ex. I.
- IV. Read aloud your answers to Ex. II.

### LESSON 10

GH. In Persian there is a guttural gh-sound, like a very heavily and thickly pronounced French r. It is the voiced equivalent of the letter  $\dot{\tau}$  kh which we had in the last lesson.

This gh-sound is spelt in one of two ways:

(a) ن gh like ن f but with two dots, and deeper in the full form:

Practise:

Learn carefully which words have  $\dot{z}$  and which words have  $\ddot{z}$  in them, to avoid errors of spelling later.

Numerals in Persian are written  $\rightarrow$  left to right, i.e. in the opposite direction to words. The reason for this is that the Arabic (from which both letters and numerals were taken into Persian) numerals are spoken in order of

increasing size, i.e. smallest first. An Arab reads 1959 as nine and fifty and nine hundred and one thousand; a Persian reads them as one thousand and nine hundred and fifty and nine, as we do in English.

33

Here are the numerals 1-10, with their names in Persian:

		1	yek	1	یک	f or 7	shesh 6	شش
		۲	do	2	دو	٧	haft 7	هفت
		٣	sé	3	مسر	٨	hasht 8	هشت
٣	or	٤	chahâr	4	چهار	٩	no <u>h</u> 9	نہ
0	or	٥	panj	5	پنج	١.	da <u>h</u> 10	ده
					190	9 = 1959		

When the numbers are used with a noun or an understood noun, in conversation we use the word

نفر nafar following the number, to indicate people,

ta following the number, to indicate things or animals.

نفر nafar and ت tâ are not used if the noun denotes an abstract idea or a measure of time:

دو ساعت two hours سه روز three days ( $r\hat{u}z = day$ )

The noun itself is always used in the *singular* form after a number:

two friends do nafar dast دو نفر دوست three requests se khahesh سه خواهش two horses do ta asb دو تا اسب

four builders chahâr nafar bunnâ چہار نفر با I have five (of them) panj tả dâram پنج تا دارم I saw six thieves shesh nafar dozd dîdam شش نفر درد دبدم

#### VOCABULARY

before قبل از ghabl az garden باغ bâgh red قرمز ghermez other than غير از ghêir as change ثفيير taghyîr rest, remainder بقيہ baghîyê

(The numerals 1 to 10, given earlier this lesson, should also be learned.)

#### EXERCISES

I. Write, pronouncing as you write:

## II. Translate:

- 1. He didn't want money.
- 2. Three glasses have (= has) warm water (in them), and two have (= has) cold water.
- 3. I gave (to-) him bread and butter.
- 4. In his (omit) hand he has three loaves of bread (sé tâ nân).

### III. Translate Ex. I.

IV. Read your Persian for Ex. II.

### LESSON 11

Arabic letters. The Arabic alphabet contains letters which have distinct and different sound-values in Arabic, but which, when used in Persian, have the same sound as each other.

For example, Arabic has four letters z:

ز (which we have had already)

ا ذ like غ d with a dot

ض ض

and & which only has a full form but which joins to its left, nevertheless.

ن , ذ , ز , and ظ have different sounds in Arabic. They all have one and the same sound in Persian—z.

woman zan زن some ba'azî بعضی paper kâghaz کاغذ noon, midday zohr

A native Persian word is usually spelt with j for z, though not always. Most words containing ظ , من , and ظ are foreign words, usually Arabic.

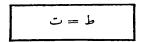
There are in Arabic three letters s:

س س (we know already) ض like ض عن undotted ئ الله ئ أ

half nesf نصف cause, reason bâ'es باعث dirty kasîf

Two letters t:

ت ن (see lesson 5) ال undotted



direction taraf طرف electric battery bâtrî باطری and two letters h:

4 4 - , • (see lesson 7)

حرف letter (of the alphabet) harf حرف

To summarize the new letters:

The last letter we have to learn is not in the Arabic alphabet—it has been added by the Persians to represent a sound never found in Arabic, and not often found in Persian. It is:

## j zh

This is an r with three dots, and gives the sound of s in our word pleasure, or of French j in je, jour.

Iampshade (French abat-jour) âbâzhûr آباژور agency (French agence) âzhâns آژانس Zhâlé (a Persian girl's name)

This completes the alphabet, with the exception of a few orthographic signs (not letters), which we shall deal with later in the book.

Here now is the whole alphabet, in the order used in Persian dictionaries, and with their Persian names:

1	alef	â	ت	té	t
ب	bé	$\boldsymbol{b}$	ث	sé	s
پ	pé	Þ	7	jî $m$	j

ट	chîm	ch	ظ	zâ	z
ح	hé hotî	h ·	ع	'ain	•
خ	khé	kh	غ	ghain	gh
د	dâl	d	ف	fé	f
ذ	zâl	$\boldsymbol{z}$	ق	ghâf	gh
ر	ré	r	<u>.1</u>	kâf	$\boldsymbol{k}$
ز	zé	$\boldsymbol{z}$	گ	gâf	g
ځ	zl.é	zh	J	lâm	l
س	sîn	s	۴	mîm	m
ش	shîn	sh	ن	nûn	n
ص	sâd	s	و	vâv	v, û, ô
ض	zâd	z	٥	hé havaz	h, é
ط	tâ	t	ى	yé	y, î

T is called *alef maddé*. The long sign is called *maddé*. Of the above, you must remember that:

```
are not joined to the letter following them,
i.e. they have no short form.

is a consonant.
is used to introduce vowels beginning words,
whether the vowel is short or long.

are both consonants and long vowels.

at the end of a word is either h or a short
vowel, é, or a.
anywhere else: is h.
```

Of the sounds for which there is more than one letter, s is far more common than عن and ص

The two letters  $\dot{z}$  ghain and  $\ddot{s}$  ghaf: both are found very frequently,  $\dot{z}$  in native Persian words and  $\ddot{s}$  in Arabic loan-words.

#### **VOCABULARY**

some بعنى ba'azi
noon, midday ظہر zohr
paper كاغذ kâghaz
direction طرف taraf
morning صبح sobh
agency آزنس

half نصف nesf
cause, reason باعث ba'es
dirty كثيف kasif
dirt كثافت kesafat
electric battery باطرى bâtrî
lampshade أبازور

### Exercises

I. Copy out the alphabet, without any explanation or names of any letters; arrange the letters in families, thus:

এ	ٺ	ع	上	ص	س	ر	د	ج	ب	1
گ	ق	غ	ظ	ض	ش	ز	ذ	<b>ج</b>		
						3		ح	ت	
								خ	ث	
			ى	٠	ن و	, ,	J			

- II. (a) Which letters are never joined to their left, i.e. have no short form?
  - (b) List the letters for z, s, t, and h which are mostly used for foreign words.

- (c) What is the commonest way of writing (i) s, (ii) z, (iii) t, (iv) h?
- (d) A word beginning with a vowel other than alef maddé must be introduced by . . . ?
- (e) Is 'ain a vowel or a consonant?
- (f) What is the short form of yé?

#### III. Translate:

- 1. My friend came to the bridge.
- 2. I am coming before you.
- 3. What did I give him? Nothing.
- 4. He has bread and water.

## IV. Read:

۱ من بشیا این سه تا نان را دادم و آن آب را
 ۲ غیر از این ندارم
 ۳ یک دوست از تهران آمد
 ۶ در این شهر آب خوب نیست
 ۵ او فردا از پل با پول میاید

- V. Read your Persian for Ex. III.
- VI. Translate Ex. IV.



# PART TWO

Grammar



#### LESSON 12

The personal pronouns in Persian are:

1st من 
$$man$$
 I من  $m\hat{a}$  we

2nd من  $shom\hat{a}$  you

3rd  $\hat{u}$  he or she ایشان  $\hat{s}h\hat{a}n$  they (people)

 $\hat{a}n$  it  $\hat{a}nh\hat{a}$  they (things)

When speaking of animals, we can use either اله and  $\hat{u}$  and  $\hat{u}$  shan or  $\hat{u}$  and  $\hat{u}$  though we usually use strictly if an and if  $\hat{u}$  and if

The Persian verb is a very simple thing to master: there are a mere handful of irregulars, and even they follow a clear pattern. Those students who have studied French or German or Russian will find the Persian verb refreshingly simple.

The infinitive of Persian verbs always ends in either -dan or -itan:

to get or take گرفتن gereftan to eat or drink خوردن khordan to see دیدن dîdan دادن dâdan

If we take the  $\dot{o}$ --an off these verbs we have:

which is the Past Stem.

To the Past Stem we add the personal endings, and this gives us the Past Tense:

1st 
$$f$$
 - -am

2nd  $J$  - -id

3rd (no ending)

(no ending)

(no ending)

(no ending)

The conjugation in the past tense of the verb گرفتن gereftan to take or to get, is therefore:

You will notice here that (a) the you-person (2nd) ending is the same for singular and plural, as in English; (b) the 3rd person singular has no ending—the past stem *itself* is used, with no further ending; (c) in the 3rd person plural, if the subject is *inanimate* (i.e. if we use i = i = i anha) the verb is used in the 3rd person singular form. We only use the

plural 3rd person ending نامان - and with ایشان shan, i.e. in referring to people or higher animals.

The --- vowel in c- and u- is long: -im, id.

The unwritten vowel in f- and J- is a short a: -am, -and.

Here are the past tenses of the other three verbs, ديدن to see, خوردن to give, and خوردن to eat or drink:

dîdan دید to see, past stem دیدن dîd-

(2) you saw دیدید) you saw بدید (شها) دیدید (shomā) dîdîd (shomā) dîdîd

(3) 
$$\begin{cases} \text{he/she saw (اریثان)} & \text{they (people) saw (ایثان)} \\ (a) & \text{did} & \text{(ishân) didand} \\ \text{it saw (آن)} & \text{they (things) saw (براً)} \\ (an) & \text{did} & \text{(anhâ) did} \end{cases}$$

to give, past stem -داد dad-

(3) 
$$\begin{cases} (a) \ dad \ dad \end{cases}$$
 (او) دادند (ishân) dâdand (ایثان) دادند (ân) dâd (آن) داد (آن) داد (ânhâ) dâd

khordan خورد- to eat or drink, past stem خورد- khord-

If the subject of the verb is emphasized, then we use the verb together with the personal pronoun (which we have bracketed in the tables above)—otherwise, the ending of the verb itself indicates who the subject is:

we ate خورديم they gave دادند I got گرفتم

For the next few lessons, until we deal with the Present Tense in Lesson 14a, we shall give verbs in the Vocabularies first in the Infinitive, then the Past Stem, thus:

to see -دیدن دید dîdan, dîd-

The Past Stem is not given in dictionaries written for Persians, as it is always regularly formed. Note that the verb usually stands last in its clause.

#### VOCABULARY

I من man you من shomâ
he/she او shomâ
it آن ân
we ام mâ
they ایشان îshân (people)
ایشان ânhâ (things)

to take/get گرفتن gereftan, past stem گرفته gereftto eat/drink خوردن khordan, past stem خوردto see دیدن dîdan, past stem دید dîdto give دادن dâdan, past stem

### EXERCISES

- I. Translate orally into Persian:
  - (1) You gave bread to that man.
  - (2) We saw a friend with his horse in town.
  - (3) He got bread and water.
  - (4) They ate bread with butter.
  - (5) I gave (to-) him everything.

II. Write out Ex. I.

III. Read Ex. II.

IV. Read aloud:

۱ در شهر اسب دیدم ۲ ما ماهی با آب و نان و کره خوردیم ۳ آن مرد سه تا اسب در شهر گرفت ؛ ایشان آن آب و نان را خوردند ۵ بنا پول گرفت ۶ اسب دیدیم ۲ برد پول دادم ۸ این اسب آب خورد ۹ در تهران هر چیز دیدم ۱۰ ایشان دو نفر را دیدند

V. Translate Ex. IV.

VI. Copy Ex. IV.

#### LESSON 12a

## farhang, Vocabulary فرهنگئ

then پس pas
bus اتو بوس otobûs
late دفتر office مفتر daftar
bath حام hammâm
yesterday خبروز dîrûz
coffee قبوه ghaḥvê
for this reason باین سبب
bé-în sabab

to go رفت رفت رفت raftan, raftto be بود بودن bûdan, bûdto come آمد آمد من amadan, amadearly, quickly زود zûd
cause, reason بسب sabab
air, weather مبا havâ
(at) night,
(in the) evening

Using this vocabulary, read aloud the following text:

دير و ز

دیر و ز هوا خیلی گرم بود. من زود حمام گرفتم و قهوه و نان و کره خوردم. پس بشهــر رفتم. با اتوبوس رفتم. اتوبوس دیر آمد و بــاین سبب من بــدفتر دیر آمدم. شب من بمنزل آمدم و شام خوردم. Take each sentence again slowly, practising its pronunciation:

man zûd hammâm gereftam va ghahvé va nân va karé khordam.

otôbûs dîr âmad va bé-în sabab man bé-daftar dîr âmadam.

shab man bé-manzel âmadam va shâm khordam.

In this lesson we have three new verbs:

These verbs all form their past tenses regularly, by first taking 3--an off their infinitives to get the past stem:

and adding the regular endings.

All Persian verbs, without a single exception, form their past tenses regularly in this way.

to c	آمدن ome	âmadan	to be بودن	bûdan
past	امد stem	âmad-	past stem	- <i>bûd</i> بود
(1)	آمدم	آمديم	بودم	بوديم
<b>(</b> 2)	آمديد	آمديد	بوديد	برديد
(3)	آمد	آمدند	ېوډ	بودند
(3){	آمد	آمد	بود	برد

to go رفتن raftan past stem رفت raft-

# tamrîn, Exercises عرين

- I. Conjugate رفتن and رفتن in the past tense.
- II. Fill in the blank spaces in these past tenses:

III. Answer orally, in complete Persian sentences, these questions on the text:

- IV. Write out your answers to Ex. III.
  - V. Translate into Persian:

Yesterday I went late to the office. The weather in Teheran was very warm, and the bus was (came) late. In the evening I went home and had (ate) supper.

#### LESSON 13

Negative verbs. Any verb, irrespective of tense, is made negative by prefixing to it -i na-. The prefix -i na- is always stressed in pronunciation.

you didn't get شها نگرفتید shomâ nàgereftîd I didn't see ندیدم nàdîdam he/she/it wasn't نبود nàbûd

(Occasionally during this book a grave accent will be put over the stressed syllable, to remind you that the stress falls there.)

### Pronounce:

- (1) man pûl nàgereftam I didn't get any money. من پول نگرفتم
- (2) shomâ shâm nàkhordîd You didn't eat supper.
- (3) Ishân bé-man pûl nàdâdand ایشان بمن پول ندادند They didn't give me money.

Before a verb beginning with a vowel, -: nà- becomes -: này- (pronounced like English "nigh"):

He didn't come او نيامد û nàyâmad

In Persian we use double negatives, for example:

او هیچ چیز نگرفت  $\hat{u}$  hich chiz nagereft literally: he didn't take nothing (هیچ چیز).

Here are some more negative expressions. They all require the verb prefixed with -i na- or -i nay-:

nowhere (" no place '') جا place jâ جا به never (" no time '') بنت time vaght هیچ وقت person kas

none (of them) ("no which") کدام which? kodâm کیام no, not a single

thing chîz چيز nothing (" no thing ") چيز

In all these cases the hich may be written on as one word with its successor, but the separate forms are more common:

Practise:

١ من شها را ديروز هيچ جا نديدم

(1) I didn't see you anywhere (" nowhere ") yesterday.

۲ در دفترش هیچوقت نبودم

(2) I was (" wasn't ") never in his office.

۳ دیروز هیچکس بمنزل نیامه

(3) Nobody came ("didn't come") home yesterday.

ع كدام مرد رفت؟ هيچ كدام نرفت

(4) Which man went? None of them went ("didn't go").

۵ دیروز هیچ پول نگرفتم

(5) I didn't get any (" no ") money yesterday.

ع هیچ چیز نخوردیم

(6) We ate ("didn't eat") nothing.

The Definite Direct Object. If we use a verb with a direct object in Persian, and that direct object is a definite known one, we usually suffix b -râ to the object. This b -râ can be written on to the word, or written separately. b is not a word, it is a particle, a suffix. But because it indicates something definite, we can often translate it into English as "the", using the definite article. There is of course no definite article as such in Persian.

Compare:

I got money man pûl gereftam من بول گرفتم ۱i.e. some money—any money—an unknown quantity) with

I got the money man pûl-râ gereftam من بول را گرفتم (i.e. a particular, known sum which we have already mentioned).

In sentence r above we could write پول را as پول و one word, if we wished. It is usually a matter of personal choice.

Similarly, in the negative, compare:

I didn't get the money من پولرا نگرفتم man pûl-râ nàgereftam

with

I didn't get (any) money من پول نگرفتم man pûl nagereftam

-râ can never be suffixed to ميرة hîch or its compounds:

I didn't get any money at all من هیچ پول نگرفتم man hîch pûl nagereftam

b -ra is also suffixed to the personal pronouns:

marâ امرا is omitted) me

shomârâ امرا you (object)

nîrâ ابرا him, her

it (object)

mârâ ابرا (note: two long â's)

shânrâ ابطانا them (people)

ânhârâ ابراا T

Note: (a)  $\cdot \cdot \cdot + \cdot \cdot = \cdot \cdot \cdot$ . The  $n \cdot \cdot \cdot$  is always dropped and the result is always written as one word.

(b) In Ju us, both d's are long.

me, the first a is short, the second long.

me. مرا Pronounce: (a as in "hand") marâ مرا me. (â as in "father") mârâ ما us.

These pronouns denote the *direct object* of the verb. Don't use them for the *indirect object*. Compare:

مرد مارا دید The man saw us

with

The man gave us (= to us) money مرد بما بول داد The indirect object (= to me, to us, etc.) is of course expressed with the به be prefix:

In English the "to" in "The man gave (to) us money" is usually omitted. In Persian we must use به فخه به به فخه به به فخه به فخ

مرد پولرا بما داد mard pûl-râ bê-mâ dâd مرد پولرا

The man gave us the money (بولرا) money is here the definite direct object, with -ra suffixed, and (to) us is an indirect object, with ! bé- prefixed). The direct object normally precedes the indirect one in Persian.

## farhang فرهنگئ

no, not a هيج hîch ماره place با غ which أو جام kodâm time وقت waght mother مادر mâdar sister sister خواهر khâhar (v silent) boy, son يسر pesar Note: (a) Do not confuse پدر father with پدر son. (b) پدر, and پدر are historically the same words as their English counterparts, of course.

## tamrîn تحرين

### I. Translate into Persian:

- (1) My father didn't give me any money.
- (2) He didn't give me the money.
- (3) My brother didn't go anywhere yesterday.
- (4) I gave him nothing.
- (5) My mother gave my sister nothing (b or ~?).
- (6) His daughter never came to the office.
- (7) Nobody went.
- (8) His father came to the office late yesterday.
- (9) That bus never comes early.
- (10) I saw the bus. We saw a bus.

## II. Translate into English:

۱ باو هیچ چیز ندادم
 ۳ هوا خیلی گرم نبود
 ۵ بایران رفت
 ۷ شیا شام نخوردید
 ۸ پولش را هیچ وقت نگرفتم
 ۸ دخترش و برادرش دیروز در شهر بودند
 ۱ این چیز را هیچ جا ندیدند

- III. Read aloud your answers to Ex. I and Ex. II.
- IV. Complete these conjugations in the past tense:

V. Put an appropriate negative with هيچ in these sentences : (e.g. شما فريت  $\rightarrow$  شما نرفتيد (شما هيچ جا نرفيتد  $\rightarrow$  شما نرفتيد)

### LESSON 13a

The word ميج and its compounds answer questions. These questions are usually introduced by special question words.

itself, with a noun, answers the question ميج chê (colloquially chî) what?

Similarly,

a هیچوقت	answer	's the q	$\mathcal{S}$ $k\hat{c}i$ when ?		
هیچ جا	,,	**	,,	کجا $koj\hat{a}$ where ?	
ميچكس	,,	,,	,,	kî who ?	
هيچ كدام	**	,,	,,	kodâm which?	
مينچ چيز	**	,,	,,	ché chîz what چہ چیز	
,				(thing)?	

Note: S kêi when? and S kî who? are written alike. In all of these cases and its compounds give a negative answer: where? nowhere; who? nobody; when? never.

When we make a question in Persian, we do not alter the order of the words. All we need to do is to raise the voice towards the end of the question.

In print, we sometimes find a European question mark used in reverse?. But this is by no means compulsory: in fact we should get accustomed to reading Persian without any punctuation at all, or at most the full stop., question mark?, and parentheses ( ).

As well as هيچ hîch, which is a negative answer, we have several positive answer words, some of which can be prefixed, like هيچ, to the answer. We shall deal for the moment with just a few:

## n this این an that این har any, every هر

Negative Question Positive Answers Answer every هر no, none هیچ ~ what? that آن this این \* now حالا then آنوقت every مروقت when کی time here ایتجا there آنجا -every مرجا nowhere میچجا کجا where this person این شخص every- مرکس this person that person آن شحص that one آن یکی each one مریکی none of مریکی that one this one این کی that thing آن چیز everything مرچیز nothing میج چیز ا this thing این چیز

Note: (a) \* " now " is a special word, كاله hâlâ. (b) اينشخص this person and اينشخص that person do not form with كس a person; they form with the Arabic word شخص a person; they form with the Arabic word اين يكي shakhs, written separately or as one word. (c) اين يكي în yekî this one and آن يكي ân yekî that one do not form with كدام, but with يكي " one".

In addition to the above list, we can add an entirely new word:

جه طور chétôur ? how ? in what way ? negative answer: هیچ طور in no way, in no manner, by no means.

positive answers : هر طور in any way, in every way.

in this way, like this, thus, so. اينطور

in that way, like that, thus, so. آن طور

or جملور has also another meaning: as an adjective it means what sort of?, what kind of? It takes no ézâfé.

چه طور منزلی است؟ « What sort of house is it ché tôur manzeli ast

and the answer: This kind اين طور întôur.

Also: of another kind طور دیگر tôur-é-dîgar (ézâfé here)

of every kind هر طور har tour

(of) that kind آن طور an tôur

Two other expressions meaning "what kind of?":

جگونه chėgûnė (one word) ) " what kind of ? " chė jûr (two words) (no ėzāfė)

We do not usually employ the answer forms corresponding to these expressions; instead we use the constructions with above.

b. The particle b, used for the definite direct object, comes after the whole group of words denoting the object. For example:

من آن مرد را دیدم I saw that man

They saw that man, my friend

It is not necessary, as you see, to use b after every word: b is a particle which appears only once after the last word-unit of the definite direct object. Even if we have a complicated direct object such as a string of words connected with the <code>ézâfé</code> (see Lessons 6 and 16), we merely put one b, written either as a separate word or on to the last consonant of the last word:

حسن پدر احمد را دیدند

hasan-é-pedar-é-ahmad-râ dîdand

They saw Hassan, the father of Ahmad or if the objects are several, linked together with and, the same rule applies:

پدر و مادر و خواهر و برادر را ندیدم pedar o mâdar o khâhar o barâdar râ nàdîdam I didn't see (my) father, mother, brother and sister.

# فرهنگ

here اینجا there آنجا everywhere مرجا nowhere میچ جا that one میچ کا where ? کجا that person آن شخص đnshakhs nobody میچکس this one این یکی none آن یکی that one آن یکی ba'ad az zoḥr afternoon بعد از ظهر motor car ماشین māshîn lunch ناهاد nāhār taxi تاکسی tāksī each one هريكي morning صبح sobh noon عظهر zohr tea خاى châi no خير na, نخير ndkhêir

#### Text

Note: In this text, and throughout most of the book, an unwritten ézâfé (é, éyé, or îyé) will be shown with an \* asterisk. This is merely as an aid to accurate reading—it is of course never there in a Persian text.

حسن دیروز کجا رفت؟ حسن دیرور هیچ جا نرفت – حسن منزل بود. حسن کی بهران رفت؟ هیچ وقت بهران نرفت. کی باحسن منزل بود؟ هیچ کس نبود. صبح احمد کجا بود؟ اینجا نبود – اورا دیدید؟ نه ندیدم. پدر\* احمد را دیدم و او در دفتر بود. احمد اینجا با مادر و خواهر خود بود.

#### . نمرين

I. Answer orally these questions on the text:

- II. Write out your answers to Ex. I.
- III. Read aloud the questions in Ex. I, reading the appropriate answer from Ex. II after each question.
- IV. Write in Persian:
  - (1) Did nobody come yesterday?
  - (2) I saw where he went. Where did he go? He went there.

- (3) How did they go home? They went home this way: by bus and by taxi.
- (4) I have never been (= I wasn't never) in Tehran.

  Were you there?
- (5) Which bus did you take? This one or that one?
- (6) I never saw this person at the office. I never saw anybody (= didn't never see nobody) there.
- (7) Where was his brother at that time? His brother was at that time in Tehran.
- V. Read aloud your Persian for Ex. IV.

#### LESSON 14

*Plurals.* In classical Persian, the rule for forming plurals of nouns was:

- (a) add il- -an to animate nouns (people or higher animals).
- (b) add \( \( \begin{array}{ll} -ha \) to inanimate nouns (lower animals or things).

But in modern Persian we can use 4- or 31- for most animate nouns. We always use 4- for inanimate ones.

a friend دوست a friends دوستان friends دوستان or دوستان woman زن women زبا or زنان things چیز things ماشین car (māshîn) ماشین

نا- after a long  $\hat{a}$  becomes خيان -yân for reasons of euphony:

builder بنا builder تا gentlemen تايان

and in nouns ending in a vowel --e, the --e is dropped and we add -egan:

بنده slave, bandé پرنده bird, parandé پنده slaves, bandégân پندگان birds, parandégân

Some animate nouns have retained exclusively il--an as their proper plural suffix, and never take --ha, even in modern Persian. Among these few are most animates ending in 1-a and --e, such as those above.

The easiest way to learn Persian plurals is to study these few rules:

- (a) All inanimates take  $-h\hat{a}$ .
- (b) A few animates take exclusively الله or عان or عان or عان : these can be learnt as they occur.
- (c) Most animates can take either il- or la- indiscriminately.
- (d) A certain number of words borrowed from Arabic form their plurals as in Arabic, but these *nearly always* have in addition a il- or la- Persian plural, which is universally accepted by educated Iranians. Thus:

سَرَل manzel, house, is an Arabic word borrowed into Persian.

Its Arabic plural is منازل manâzel (a medial â is inserted). Its Persian plural is منزلما or منزلما manzelhâ.

Both the native and the Arabic plurals are acceptable.

Do not attempt yet to learn Arabic plurals as such: they will be dealt with later.

The ending is always, if possible, joined to its word. The ending is can be written either joined or disjoined. After a vowel if the disjoined, to avoid the confusion of having two letters is together.

## For example:

but

bachché بچہ bachché

children بجمها bachché-hâ

## talaffoz PRONUNCIATION

The plural endings نا- and اه- are always stressed.

The plural noun can take the usual prefixes and suffixes: in the case of suffixes, the plural ending is added before any other suffix:

child بچه to the child ببچهها to the children ببچهها a house منزل gentleman اقا to the gentleman بآقایان to the gentlemen بآقایان my house منزلم

my houses منازلم or منزلمايم

his friend دوستشان their friend دوستشان his friends دوستهایش or دوستهایشان their friends دوستهایشان or

(after - and l- -esh and -eshân become -يش -yesh and -yeshân).

In the case of a definite direct object in the plural, the usual suffix b-, coming right at the end of the whole object expression, is used:

I saw the friend
I saw the friend

Y من دوستش را دیدم
I saw his friend

M من دوستها را دیدم
I saw the friends

A من دوستهایش را دیدم
I saw his friends

من دوستانشان را دیدم
I saw their friends

A من دوستشان را دیدم
I saw their friends

You will notice that the combination in no. &:

## دوستانشان را dûstâneshânrâ

has as its first element compared; the first -il- is the plural, friends; -i--esh is his, which is itself made plural compared eshân, their; and is the suffix of the definite direct object. There are two separate syllables -il--ân- in the word. The first is a plural sign transforming "friend" into "friends"; the second makes the possessive "his" into "their".

he ézâfé is unwritten and pronounced é. After اله - it is written - and pronounced -yé.

good boys (animate pl.) پسران خوب pesarân-ê-khûb good boys (inanimate pl.) پسرهای خوب pesarhâ-yê-khûb little children بچههای کوچک bachchêhâ-yê-kûchek big birds پرندگان بزرگ parandégân-ê-bozorg

اين this and آن that do not change to mean these and those when used before plural nouns:

آن ماشین	این ماشین
that car	this car
آن ماشینها	این ماشینها
those cars	these cars

but when these and those have no noun after them, or when the noun is understood but not expressed, then they take the plural inanimate ending b, invariably:

Which women did you see? کدام زنان را دیدید I saw these (ones) اینها را دیدم آنها را دیدم Do not confuse 47 those ones (animate or inanimate) with the subject-pronoun 47 they (inanimate only), which we had in Lesson 12.

In Lesson 12 we learned that  $abla^{T}$ , referring to inanimate subjects (i.e. lower animals and things) takes the verb in the 3rd person *singular* form. This rule applies when the subject of the verb is an inanimate plural noun. Compare

The women came زنان آلمند They came ایشان آلمند with

These things were (= was) bad اين چيزها بد بود They were (= was) bad آنها بد بود

## فرهنگئ

child بجب bachche
bird برنده parande
to pull برنده (کشیدن (کشیدن) kashîdan,
kashîdbook کتاب ketâb
dog کتاب sag
pen بنگ ghalam
tree قلم derakht
small کر جک kûchek
line, writing خدم medâd

cat گربه gorbé
to read (خواندن (خواند) khândan,
 khândtail دم dom
to write (نوشت neveshtan,
 neveshtleaf ب barg
letter بامم nâmé
paper نامه bordan
take, carry (برد برد به bordan

# تمرين

## I. Put into the plural:

زن - پرنده - سگ - درخت - باغ - قلم - مداد - منزل - کتاب - آقا - بچه - اتوبوس - ماشین - خط - گربه - اسب - این سگ - آن گربه - این - آن

## II. Put into the plural:

١٠ خط \* آن نامه خيلي بد بود. نخواندم. شها آثرا خوانديد؟ نه نامه را نخواندم

## III. Translate:

- 1. Did you read the letters? Which letters? These.
- 2. My books were not very big.
- 3. He took pens, papers, and pencils (singular) to the office.
- 4. Yesterday I wrote a letter. Which letter? This one.
- 5. These children came late. How did they come, by bus or by car?
- 6. These houses were big, but those were small.
- 7. I saw the birds in the trees.
- 8. These bad boys pulled that dog's tail.
- 9. He drew a (یکٹ) line with a big pencil. (کشیدن to pull also means to draw, in all senses.)
- 10. His dog and our cat went in(to) our garden.

- IV. Read aloud your answers to Ex. II.
  - V. Read aloud your answers to Ex. III.
- VI. In the spaces in the sentences on the right, put the correct form of the past tense of the verb on the left:

VII. How is the ézâfé pronounced in the following, é or yé?

VIII. How is the ézâfé expressed in the following, unwritten or  $\omega$ ?

#### LESSON 14a

# فرهنگئ

how old is he/she? منس sennesh chist? المجيدة I haven't ندارم nàdâram twenty بيست bist but ول vali you have داريد dârîd

big بزرگ bozorg
is است ast
I have دارم dâram
how much ?
how many ?
we have داريم dârîm

#### TEXT

این مرد پدرم است. آن زن مادرم است. من یک پـدرویک مادر دارم. چند برا در و خواهر دارید؟ من برا در ندارم ولی یک خواهر دارم. و سنش چیست؟ سن\* خواهر\* من بیست است. شما چند برادر و خواهر دارید؟ من خواهر ندارم ولی دو برادر دارم. ما یک منزل در تهران داریم. منزل بزرگ است. منزل \* شما بزرگ است؟ بله منزلمان خیلی بزرگ است.

Take each sentence individually, and read it slowly, making sure (use the vocabulary where necessary) that you understand it:

In mard pedaram ast این مرد پدرم است This man is my father

an zan madaram ast آن زن مادرم است That woman is my mother

man yek pedar va yek mâdar dâram من یک پدرو یک مادر دارم آ

I have one father and one mother

chand barâdar o khâhar dârîd? إ چند برادر و خواهر دارید؟ How many brothers and sisters have you?

۵ من برادر ندارم ولی یک خواهر دارم

man barâdar nàdâram vali yek khâhar dâram

I have no brother (I don't have a brother) but I have
one sister

ra sennesh chist? ! بعنش چیست And what (how much) is her age? ٧ سن \* خواهر \* من بيست (٢٠) است.

senn-é-khâhar-é-man bîst ast

My sister's age is twenty

۸ شا چند رادر و خواهر دارید؟

shomâ chand barâdar o khâhar dârîd?

How many brothers and sisters have you got?

۹ من خواهر ندارم ولی دو برادر دارم.

man khâhar nàdâram vali do barâdar dâram

I have no sister, but I have two brothers

ا ما یک منزل در تهران داری سط yek manzel dar tehrån dårim ما یک منزل در تهران داری We have a house in Tehran

> ۱۱ منزل بزرگ است. manzel bozorg ast The house is big

nanzel-ė-shoma bozorg ast? إدا منزل \* شيا نزرك است؟ Is your house (the house of you) big?

۱۳ بله منزلمان خیل نزرگ است

balé manzelemân khêilî bozorg ast

Yes, our house is very big

Practise reading the text till you can do it fluently, before continuing with this lesson.

پودن

bûdan to be is itself very rarely used in the Present Tense. Instead we use this Present Tense:

(for I am, you are, he is, etc.)

1 (man) hastam (من) هستم (mâ) hastîm (ما) هستير (شا) (shomâ) hastîd (شا) هستيد (شا)

$$3$$
 $\{(\hat{u})\ ast$  (او) ( $\hat{s}$ shân) hastand (ایشان) هستند ( $\hat{a}$ n) ast (آن) ( $\hat{a}$ nhâ) ast (آن) است

You will notice (a) the endings for the 1st and 2nd persons singular and plural, and the 3rd plural animate (ایثان) are those we have already met in the Past tense; (b) the 1st and 2nd persons singular and plural and the 3rd plural animate (ایثان) begin with ه h. The آن, ار forms have no ه h.

There is a 3rd singular and plural (j), ind j persons) which goes with an h: Asst. This form means there is, there are (it is an emphatic form). Compare:

It is a house manzel ast منزل است

with

There is a house manzel hast منزل هست The negative of all these forms is:

$$1$$
  $nistam$  نیستی  $nistim$  نیستید  $nistid$  نیستید  $nistid$  نیستن  $nistand$  نیستن  $nist$   $nist$   $nist$   $nist$   $nist$ 

is used as the negative of نيـت as well :

dâshtan, to have داشتن

The verb داختن dâshtan means to have. In the Past Tense it is regular, i.e. we take off the ن-an, leaving دائد- dâsht-as the Past Stem.

To the Past Stem we add the regular past endings to get the Past Tense:

$$2$$
  $d\hat{a}sht\hat{i}d$  داشتید  $d\hat{a}sht\hat{i}d$  داشتید  $d\hat{a}sht$  داشت  $d\hat{a}sht$  داشت  $d\hat{a}sht$  داشت  $d\hat{a}sht$ 

= I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they had

The present tense endings for all verbs except in, which we have just learned, are the same except in one person (3rd singular, and hence also 3rd inanimate plural) as the past tense endings. The difference lies not in the endings but in the stem to which those endings are added.

Of داشت , داشت is the Past Stem and دار- the Present Stem.

The present tense of داشتن to have is:

$$1$$
  $d\hat{a}ram$  داریم  $d\hat{a}r\hat{i}m$  دارید  $d\hat{a}r\hat{i}d$  دارید  $d\hat{a}rad$  دارند  $d\hat{a}rad$  دارند  $d\hat{a}rad$  دارد  $d\hat{a}rad$  دارد

You will notice that (a) the 1st singular and plural, 2nd singular and plural, and the 3rd animate plural (ن, لم, م, and ايشان forms) have the same personal endings as has the past tense, but (b) for the 3rd singular and 3rd inanimate plural (آبا, and آبا, and آبا) the ending is --ad; (c) the stem vowel of this verb is pronounced long, â; the --am, --ad, and --and endings are pronounced with a short a, while, as in the past tense, the î of --în is long.

The endings given above are the same in spelling and pronunciation for all verbs in the present tense except بودن to be.

nà- is added to the present tense to negate it just as it is to the past tense:

nàdâshtan, not to have نداشتن					
- نداشت- past stem			present ster ندار-	n	
	past	tense:	present	tense:	
1	نداشتم	نداشتيم نداشتيد	ندارم	ندارج	
2	نداشتيد	نداشتيذ	ندار ید	ندار ید	
J	نداشت	نداشتند	ندارد	ندارند	
3	نداشت	نداشت	ندارد	ندارد	

The present tense of all verbs is normally used to indicate the *future* also. This is especially the case when the context of the verb tells us that the future is intended.

I am (I shall be) here tomorrow فردا اینجا هـــّم We shan't have (haven't) a lesson tomorrow فردا درس نداریم

I. Read again the text and the vocabulary, to refresh your mind on the words and constructions, and then answer orally the following questions, with reference to yourself:

- II. Write out your answers to Ex. I.
- III. Put in each space the correct past tense form of بودن:

### IV. Translate and write out:

- 1. Tomorrow I shall be at the office early.
- 2. Yesterday I had two gentlemen at the house.
- 3. I didn't have the money—did you have (it)?
- 4. This room has four windows (پنجره panjeré) and one door. The windows have six panes (شیث shîshê) each (one).
- 5. These aren't my books. Where are they? I didn't see them anywhere.

# V. Write the negative of these sentences:

§ "I have been here ..." literally in Persian, "I am here a long time"—the *present*, not the perfect or past, is used when the action continues from the past into the present. Cf. exactly the same construction in three major European languages:

Je suis ici depuis longtemps Ich bin hier seit langer Zeit Я давно вдесь because I am still here

#### LESSON 15

# The indefinite suffix 5--î

When we wish to use a noun and to make clear that it is indefinite, we add to it the suffix  $e^{-i}$ :

mard man, the man

مردى mardî a man, some man or other, any man

The suffix can be added to a compound, i.e. to a noun
followed by a qualifying adjective:

مرد \* خوبی mard-é-khûbî some good man or other مرد \* خوبی shaḥr-é-bozorgî any big city

It can be attached to certain pronouns, and to the word yek one:

يكي yekî someone يكي shakhsî somebody شخصى kasî somebody, anybody كسي hîchî none, nothing (at all)

If we wish, we can add it to the noun and not to the adjective:

مردى خوب mardî khûb any good man in which case the ézâfé is dropped. It is most important to remember that if -- î is added in the middle of an ézâfé compound, such as مرد \* خوب mard-é-khûb, then that interrupted ézâfé is dropped. We have thus several good ways of expressing, for example, "some good man or other":

مرد \* خوبی یک مرد خوب یک مرد \* خوبی مردی خوب یک مردی خوب

In each of these combinations, the  $\mathcal{L}$ - $\hat{i}$  is added to a different word. They all mean much the same thing, but the one we dealt with first,

مرد \* خوبي

is by far the most common.

If the noun ends in  $\omega$ - -î already, we cannot add a further  $\omega$ - to it:

sandalî chair, or any chair, or the chair صندل kashtî boat, any boat, the boat

If the noun or adjective ends in 3-2n or 1-2n we pronounce a glottal stop (see Lesson 9) between this final vowel and the i. We have already had, in Lesson 9, the letter i ain. But i ain is only found in Arabic loan words, and this i suffix is purely Persian. Instead of ain in this case we use the sign i, called hamzé. Hamzé is not a letter, it is a sign. It is written over what we call a bearer, which looks like i without its dot, thus:

or:

Thus آنا âghâ with عن -- î indefinite added looks like نائی " some gentleman or other" and is pronounced âghâ'î. Do not, in pronouncing this word and others like it, run the l into the عن The ; is there expressly to prevent this tendency. Pronounce a clear stop, a catch of the breath, between the \ and the \: نان âghâ'î.

Exactly the same thing happens with a word ending in  $-\hat{u}$ :

بو  $b\hat{u}$  smell بوی بد  $b\hat{u}$ - $y\dot{e}$  bad the bad smell بوئ  $b\hat{u}$ ' $\hat{i}$  some smell بوئ  $b\hat{u}$ ' $\hat{i}$  bad or  $\hat{i}$  some bad smell or other  $\hat{b}\hat{u}$ - $\hat{v}$ - $\hat{b}\hat{u}$ - $\hat{v}$ - $\hat{b}\hat{u}$ - $\hat{v}$ - $\hat{b}$ - $\hat{v}$ - $\hat{v}$ - $\hat{b}$ - $\hat{v}$ - $\hat$ 

# Similarly:

بنا bannâ the builder

bannâ'î any builder بنائی

با jâ place

jâ'î some place, somewhere

An indefinite -i added to a word ending in  $\cdot -e$  (vocalic h) is written either with a hamze over the  $\cdot$  and nothing else:

khâné house خانه

khâné'i a house خانة

or the hamzé can be left off, giving a form identical with the definite form:

خاند khâné house, or khâné'î a house

or the syllable -î is written :

خانهاي khâné'i a house

It goes without saying that as ¿ is an indefinite suffix,

one very seldom finds by the definite direct object suffix connected to it. Compare:

بنا دیدم I saw a builder بنا را دیدم I saw the builder بنائی دیدم

Nor can ع be found in conjunction with such definite words as اين this and عر every. There are exceptions to this:

این یکی means this one ب آن یکی پ that one پ هریکی ,, every one or everyone

c- is often found with negatives, and especially with no, none, not a. In this case the c- is best expressed in English by "any", with the verb in the negative:

کسی دیدید؟ Did you see anybody?

No, I didn't see anyone (at all)

which could also be (without هیچ کسی ندیدم):

No, I didn't see anyone

After a word ending in long  $\hat{a}$  1-, the 1 of is dropped, both in speech and in writing.

Rojâst? Where is it? کجاست؟ شرف این آب نیست ودکاست fin âb nîst, vodkâst
This isn't water, it's vodka

After the question S ki who?, the verb sound you are is joined on in the same way. These two words are almost invariably written as one when they occur together:

? كيستيد kîstîd ? Who are you

The unblended kî hastîd کی هستید؟ form does exist, but it is very rare.

Something, somewhere, somebody, someone, followed by an adjective, are regularly expressed by using the c- suffix on the first word and dropping the c- suffix. Learn:

something good چیزی خوب something bad چیزی بد someone (somebody) good خوب somewhere else

یکی دیگر one more, another one, a different one (دیگر dîgar is an adjective meaning other, different).

# تمرين

I. Give the indefinite form of these words:

۽ گاه	۳ ږو	۲ آقا	۱ بنا
۸ کوچه	٧ درخت	م كتاب	۵ کس
۱۲ صندلی	۱۱ بچه	۱۰ مرد	۹ چيز

### II. Write in Persian:

- 1. I saw that man yesterday. He had some book or other in (his) hand.
- 2. Which bus came late? I didn't see: sometimes  $(g\hat{a}h\hat{i})$  the buses are late, sometimes early.
- 3. A gentleman came to the house today.
- 4. Did you take anything from the table? No sir, I didn't see or (= and) take anything.
- 5. Who is this? It isn't his brother, it's someone else.

### III. Pronounce:

### IV. Read:

۱ در این منزل کسی دیگر هست؟ نه آقا کسی دیگر نیست.

۲ چرا این مرد دوستی ندارد؟ این مرد مرد بدی است و هیچکس دوستش نیست.

۳ از دفتر دیروز ظهر جائی دیگر نرفتم.

٤ شما چرا بمنزل نرفتید؟ وقت نداشتم.

۵ شما کتاب \* خوبی دارید. چه کتابی؟ من کتابی ندارم.

### V. Translate Ex. IV.



#### LESSON 15a

Possessive pronoun endings. We have already had the their. Here -شان his/her/its, and -شان his/her/its, and now is the full table of possessive suffixes:

# a horse)

(1) اسبم asbam asbemân اسمان my horse our horse (2) اسبتان asbetân asbetân اسبتان your horse your horse asbeshân اسبشات (3) اسبش asbesh his/her/its horse their horse We can add these endings to a plural noun: (friends دوستان)

dûstânam دوستانم dûstânemân دوستانمان our friends my friends (2) دوستانتان dûstânetân dûstânetân دوستانتان your friends your friends dûstâneshân دوستانشان (3) دوستانش dûstânesh their friends his/her/its friends

If we add these endings to a word ending in a vowel, for example an inanimate plural in b--hâ, we put in a -2- -y- to make it possible to pronounce the word:

# (horses)

<b>(1)</b>	اسبهايم	asbhâyam	اسبهايمان	asbhâyemân
		my horses		our horses
<b>(2)</b>	اسبهايتان	asbhâyetân	اسبهايتان	asbhâyetâ <b>n</b>
		your horses		your horses
(3)	اسبهايش	asbhâyesh	اسبهايشان	asbhâyeshân
		his/her/its horses		their horses

These are the possessive endings we usually write and speak: they are unstressed. If, however, we wish to stress the fact of ownership of something, then we often use the noun followed by the *ėzâfė* followed by the *personal pronoun* (not the possessive):

This isn't your horse (= the horse of you), it's my horse (= the horse of me)

sandalî-yé-shomâ-râ nàdîdam vali sandalî-yé-û râ dîdam

I didn't see your chair, but I saw his chair

If the possessive pronoun refers to the subject of the verb, e.g. in such constructions as

I took my (own) money
He has his (own) house
They saw their (own) friends

we cannot use either the -ش -تان -م, etc., endings or the ezâfé construction shown above. We have to use the particle

can either be used by itself, linked like any other adjective by the ézâfé to the noun possessed:

in which case the ightharpoonup khod is invariable, and does not change for person:

82

۲ ما پول \* خود را گرفتیم We took our money ۳ او پول \* خود را گرفت He took his money

and so on, the context showing us to whom the خود refers, or we can, for special emphasis, add the -ث -تان -م etc., possessive endings to the خود, depending on the person concerned:

 $p\hat{u}l$ -é-khodam r $\hat{a}$  gereftam پول \* خودم را گرفتم  $p\hat{u}l$ -é-khodem $\hat{a}$ n r $\hat{a}$  gereft $p\hat{u}l$ -é-khodesh r $\hat{a}$  gereft $p\hat{u}l$ -é-khodesh r $\hat{a}$  gereft

جود, with or without the -ش -تان -م, etc., possessive endings suffixed to it, can take the ل definite object ending if desired:

and so on for all persons. This structure is used whenever the possessive refers to the subject of the verb itself. Compare:

> ا اسبش را گرفتم I took his (i.e. somebody else's) horse

and

۵ اسبش را گرفت

He took his (somebody else's) horse

with

۶ اسب \* خودش را گرفت

He took his (i.e. his own) horse

# فرهنگئ

safîr سفير safîr sefârat سفارت jang جنگ war vazîr وزير vazîr وزارت\* جنگ Ministry of War vezârat-é-jang وزارت \* Ministry of Justice دادگستری vezârat-é-dâdgostarî méidân میدان square lane  $\sim kuché$ ghashang قشنگ beautiful kashi کاشی mosaic کاشیکاری kâshîkârî to drive راندن راند- rândan, rândmokhtalef مختلف various گذشتن گذشته (by) کنشتن gozashtan, gozasht- (az) قردوسی (a Persian poet) فردوسی Ferdoust istâdan, ایستادن ایستادfstâdshôfer شوفر

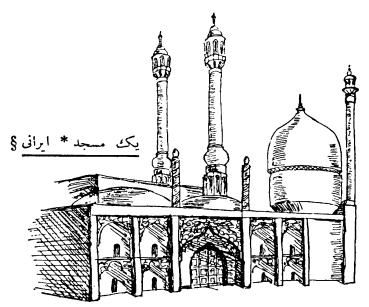
keshvar کشبور gûshé گوشم hainchonin همچنین زبان\* فارسي the Persian Language zaban-é-farsî tongue, language زبان zabân pâdeshâh بادشاه malcké ملکہ court בנטל darbâr vezârat وزارت vezârat masjed مسجد justice دادگستری dâdgostarî khîdban خيابان name -- l esm taxi تاكسى tâksî building عمارت 'emârat rang رنگ colour sabz سبز green bank مانک bânk أبى blue أبى åbî zard زرد vellow/golden hanuz . . . nà- منوز ، . . نه not yet

### Read:

# خیابانهای \* شهر

دیروز یک تاکسی گرفتم و از خیابانهای \* بزرگ و کوچک \* شهر گذشتم. گاهی تاکسی می ایستاد و ما عمارتهای \* قشنگ را می دیدیم. در این شهر هر خیابان و هر کوچه چیزی دارد و هنوز همه چیز را ندیده ایم. این میدان \* کوچک \* قشنگ را دیدید؛ در هر یکی از گوشههایش یک در \* بزرگ هست. این چهار در درهای \* دربار \* پادشاه است. در بادشاه و ملکه \* ایران است. در خیابانهای \* دیگر \* شهر عمارتهای \* دیگر هست. اینجا و زارت \* جنگ – و زارتهای \* دیگر را دیدید؛ دیروز و زارتهای \* دادگستری و فرهنگ را دیدم. همچنین منزل \* دیدید؛ دیروز و زارتهای \* دادگستری و فرهنگ را دیدم. همچنین منزل \*

در ته \* این خیابان یک مسجد \* بزرگ هست. مسجدهای \* § ایران خیلی قشنگ است! رنگهای \* آبی و زرد و سبز دارد. تاکسی همچنین از سفارتهای \* مختلف در خیابان \* فردوسی گذشت. سفارتها خیلی بزرگ است و باغهایش خیلی قشنگ. هر سفارت باغ \* خودش را دارد.



masajed also has an Arabic plural : مسجد masajed.

# تمرين

I. Fill in the space with the correct possessive, either suffix or خود as appropriate:

۱ ديروز پسرتان را ديدم. شها پسر — را ديديد؟

۲ قبل از درس هر یکی از پسرها کتاب -- را گرفت. من کتابها -- را بایشان دادم.

۳ هر سفارت باع --- را دارد.

### II. Write in Persian:

- 1. He passed through his (own) garden.
- 2. I passed through his garden.
- 3. I passed through my garden.
- 4. He passed through my garden.
- 5. He passed through her garden.

### III. Answer orally and in writing:

# LESSON 16

Ezâfé اضافه

It is time to revise the ézâfé.

The ézâfé is a short syllable, pronounced é after consonants and yé after vowels. It is used to show:

## (a) possession:

	اسب * مرد	اسبهای * مرد
اسب * این مرد	اسب * آن مرد	اسب * پادشاه
اسبهای * این مرد	اسبهای * آن مرد	اسب * كدام مرد؟

(b) noun + qualifying adjective:

مرد * بزرگ	<b>دست *</b> راست	اسبهای * ایرانی
باغ * قشنگ	کتابهای * فارسی	کتّاب * فاّرسی

(c) apposition (agreement):

Note: (1) it can be used to denote any combination of (a), (b), and (c) above:

(2) If we use the indefinite suffix  $\omega$ - after a noun linked by an  $\ell z \hat{a} f \ell$  to the next word, that  $\ell z \hat{a} f \ell$  is dropped and replaced by the  $\omega$ -:

The writing and pronunciation of the ézâfé

(a) It is unwritten, and pronounced as a short vowel -é-; after a word ending in a consonant:

Remember that a breathed • h, that is to say, one following a written or unwritten vowel, is a consonant:

(b) It is written  $\omega$ - and pronounced -yė-; after a word ending in a long vowel 1 or  $\omega$ :

(c) After the long vowel - î and after • é (h) as a vowel,

the *ezâfe* is pronounced -ye. It is usually in these cases unwritten, but it is occasionally written, to avoid possible ambiguity, with a hamze over the s or the 4:

good fruit ميوة خوب or ميوه خوب *mîvé-yé-khûb* a big ship کشی، بزرگ or کشی *kashtî-yé-bozorg* this gentle- صندلی، این آقا or صندلی این آقا sandalî-yé-în âghâ man's chair

If we wish to add the definite direct object suffix b to a compound linked by an ézâfé (or with many ézâfés) we add the b to the last element only. It is either written on to this last word, or written separately; more often separately.

this big chair این صندلی، بزرگ în sandalî-yé-bozorg این صندلی، بزرگ را کجا گرفتید؟ în sandalî-yé-bozorg râ kojâ gereftîd? Where did you get this big chair?

The possessive <code>ezafe</code> (see Lesson 15a) is often used, especially in conversation, with the noun <code>JL mâl</code> "property" thus: \* <code>JL mâl-e-</code> "the property of". We use \* <code>JL mâl-e-</code> when the possessing is the thought uppermost in the mind of the speaker. Compare:

with

This book is mine این کتاب مال \* من است عتاب مال \* من است این کتاب مال \* من کتاب

The question "whose?" can only be asked by using \* الله على الله الله الله الله على بود؟ : مال الله على بود؟ : مال الله على بود؟ . "Whose car was that? (literally, That car, the property of whom was it?). "Whose is

...?" as a question comes last in its sentence. It is written:

. . . مال کی است؟

or

. . . مال كيست؟

and is in both cases pronounced mâl-é-kîst?

Whose is this book?

این کتاب مال \* کیست؟ or این کتاب مال \* کی است؟ *în ketâb mâl-é-kîst ?* 

مال \* من است The answer could be مال \* من است mâl-é-man ast It's mine

or

mâl-é-man mine مال \* من

an be used to great emphatic effect. Compare مال \*

آمد و کتاب \* من را گرفت

He came and took my book

with

آمد و کتابی را که مال \* من بود گرفت

He came and took the book which was mine

# فرهنگئ

easy آسان غدم آسان ميره fruit ميره ميره mivé
tree درخت derakht
several, many, much درغت zîâd
apple ميب sîb
village مع déḥ
interesting (literally noteworthy)
مال المال المال

bazaar بازار bâzâr
cherry گیلاس gîlâs
Hassan حسن hasan
fire اتش âtesh
teacher آموزگار pâ-yé-takht
Firoozan (an Iranian name)
بایتخت fîrûzān
national فروزان
lamp, light خروزان
المها مها naghghâshî
education, vocabulary, dictionary فرهنگ farhang
Esfahan (city in S. Iran)

# تمرين

I. In these sentences, mark the ézâfé, if any, with an \* (asterisk). Use also hamzé where appropriate:

II. Read the above sentences when you have marked in the *êzâfê*, taking care to pronounce it correctly.

### III. Write in Persian:

- 1. Whose car is that? Which one? That one.
- 2. That is the Minister of Education's car.
- 3. Tehran is the capital of Iran. It is a big city.
- 4. There are not many big cities in Iran: but there are many small villages.
- 5. As the car passed through the streets of Esfahan we saw something interesting.
- IV. Explain the *ezafé* in these phrases by placing each one in one or other of these columns, thus:

Apposition	Noun + Adjective	Possession
آقای * فیروزان	بانک * ملي	رئيس * بانك

۱ حسن \* شوفر کجاست؟ ۲ این عمارت \* بزرگ چیست؟ ۳ اسب \* این آقا اسب \* قشنگی است. ٤ چراغهای \* این ماشین روشن است ۵ فرش و نقاشی \* قشنگ در بازار دیدید؟

### LESSON 16a

The present tense of verbs. We have already had the present tense of بودن and داشتن. When we conjugated to have in the present, we took the Present Stem, which for was دار- and added the endings

For the present tense of all other verbs, we take the present stem, as we did with على above, add the same personal endings as we did to -عالى above, and also (this is most important) add the Present Prefix:

Infinitive	Past Stem	Present Stem
read خواندن khândan	-khând خواند	-khân- خوانـ
kashîdan کشیدن	-kashîd کشید	-ئدkash-
bâftan بافتن weave	-بافت <i>bâft</i>	-غابbâf-

To these present stems we add (1) the personal endings as for the present of داشتن to have, and (2) ميه mî- the prefix for the present tense. Here now in full are the present tenses of these three model verbs:

(a) to read : خواندن, past stem خواندن $kh\hat{a}nd$ .

Present Stem -خواند  $-kh\hat{a}n$ 

(1)	I read mîkhânam	ميخوانم	we read mîkhânîm	ميخوانيم
(2)	you read mîkhânîd	ميخوانيد	you read mîkhânîd	ميخوانيد
(3)	he reads mîkhânad it reads	ميخواند	they read mîkhânand	ميخوانند
(0).	it reads <i>mîkhânad</i>	ميخواند	they read <i>mîkhânad</i>	ميخواند

(b) to pull : کشیدن, past stem کشید kashîd-.

Present Stem -کئ- -kash-

(1) mîkasham	ميكشم	mîkashîm	ميكشيم
(2) mîkashîd	ميكشيد	mîkashîd	ميكشيد
$(3) \begin{cases} m\hat{\imath}kashad \\ m\hat{\imath}kashad \end{cases}$	ميكشد	mîkashand	ميكشند
(°) mîkashad	ميكشد	mîkashad	ميكشد

(c) to weave : بافتن, past stem -غافت bâft-

Present Stem -باف- -bâf-

<b>(1)</b>	mîbâfam	ميبافم	mîbâfîm	ميبافيم
<b>(2)</b>	mîbâfîd	ميبافيد	mîbâfîd	ميبافيد
(3).	mîbâfad mîbâfad	ميبافد	mîbâfand	ميبافند
(3)	mîbâfad	ميبافد	mîbâfad	ميبافد

Apart from داشتن to be and داشتن to have, there are no irregular verbs as such in Persian. We can put it this way:

- (a) All verbs, including even داشتن, are completely regular in the past tense.
- (b) بودن is seldom used in the present—the forms مستم, etc., are used instead.
- (c) داشت is without the -يـ mî- prefix in the present, otherwise its present is regular.
- (d) For all remaining verbs, it is necessary to find the present stem. This is got in most cases by taking تن or عن or عن off the infinitive, but in many cases the present stem is irregular.

Note that: the *present stem* is the only irregularity ever encountered; once we have the stem, we add - mi- and suffix the regular present tense endings. And even then, most so-called "irregular" present stems can be grouped together. We shall study some of these groups from time to time.

Here are the present stems of the verbs we know so far (irregular present stems are marked §):

			Present
Infinitive	English	Present Stem	1st Singular
رفتن	go	-روrav-§	ميروم
ديدن	see	-نينbîn-§	ميبيم
دادن	give	-دهde <u>h</u> - §	ميدهم
گرفتن	take, get	gîr-§- گير -	میگیرام
خوردن	eat, drink	-khorخور-	ميخورام
خوابيدن	sleep	- <i>khâb-</i> -خواب	ميخوابم

خواندن	read	-خوان-	-khân-	ميخوانم
بافتن	weave	-با <b>ذ</b> -	-bâf-	ميبافم
نوشتن	write	-نويس-	-nevîs-§	مينويسم
گذشتن	pass by	- گذر -	-gozar-§	میگذرم

The negative prefix can be added to the present tense:

nàmîravam I'm not going عبروم nàmîbînîd you don't see

# talaffoz تلفظ

The vowel of  $\rightarrow$  is long: mi. It is stressed when it is the only prefix.

The vowel of -i is short: nà. It is stressed whenever it appears. Practise pronouncing:

you go میروید *miravid* (prefix stressed) you aren't going میروید *nàmiravid* (first prefix stressed)



The battle of Rustam (right) and Esfandyâr, an episode from Ferdousi's poem "Shâhnâmé" (Book of Kings) which is the Persian national epic.

(Drawn from B. W. Robinson's "Persian Miniatures", by kind permission of the publishers, Bruno Cassirer, Ltd., Oxford.)

We have learnt a verb meaning to be in the present; مستيد, etc. There is also a form of the present of this important verb which appears as a suffix.

# Examples:

- (1) singular من خيلي خوشم man khêilî khosham I am very happy
- (2) singular/plural بر کردیه؟ dîr kardîd? Are you late?
- (1) plural ما راحتيم mâ râhatîm

We are comfortable

(2) plural بلدند baladand

They are au fait

(balad بلد adjective = informed, au fait)

If we wish to suffix f--îm or 2--îd to a word ending in 1--2 or 2--2, we write a hamzé on a bearer first and pronounce the glottal stop, thus:

راستگونیم râstgû'îm We are truthful بنائید؟

bannâ'îd ? Are you a builder ?

In the same situation the suffixes f--am, J--and are written separately, with their own I alef: I.

After a final 4 & all these suffixes must be written with their own introductory \ alef:

khasté am I'm tired خستہ ام

خیل گرسنه اند khêilî gorosnê and They are very hungry خیل گرسنه اند gorosnê = hungry ; خت khastê = tired ;  $r\hat{a}stg\hat{u} = truthful$ 

? shomâ khasté îd? Are you tired شيا خسته ايد؟

Note: There is a negative short form of this verb "to be", but it is very seldom used. We need not bother with it here.

# فرهنگئ

last night امروز last night امروز at home منزل manzel tonight امشب emshab time نعو vaght work کار kâr

restaurant رستوران restoran window پنجر panjeré room نجره otâgh garage گاراز garazh servant نوکر noukar tired خسته khasté

### TEXT

دیروز ببازار رفتم. امروز کجا میروید؟ من امروز ببازار نمیروم میروم § دفتر. دیشب منزل شام خوردم ولی امشب وقت ندارم و باین سبب در رستوران شام میخورم. شما کجا شام میخورید؟

از پنجرهٔ اطاق خودتان چه چیزها میبینید؟ از پنجره گاراژ \* بزرگ را میبینیم و همچنین یک میدان. ماشینها از میدان میگذرد و در خیابانها میرود. من فارسی میخوانم شما فارسی میخوانمید؟ نه من فارسی نمیخوانم و مینویسم. چه چیز بنوکر خودتان میدهید؟ من باو پول میدهم و او از من پولرا میگیرد. شما دیشب زود خوابیدید یا دیر ؟ دیشب من خیل دیر خوابیدم – کار \* زیاد داشتم ولی امشب خیلی زود میخوام – خسته ام.

§ After the verbs آمدن to go and آمدن to come, we can omit -. to-, which is then understood:

mîravam daftar I go to the office

تمرين

### I. Write in Persian:

- 1. I am tired. (Short form.)
- 2. Do you write?
- 3. Are you going?
- 4. He doesn't read.
- 5. We are happy. (one word.)
- 6. They are going.
- 7. They came.
- 8. Who sees?
- 9. What happens? (= passes).
- 10. You give.

### II. Put into the Present Tense:

- in the Present. ديدن and گرفتن in the Present.
- IV. Change the long forms of "to be" in these examples to the suffix form (e.g. من بزرگ هستم):

V. Complete, in the Present Tense:

بافتن	۱ در ایران فرشهای * خیلی قشنگ
رفتن	۳ او فردا باصفهان
نوشتن	٣ ما نامه
گذشتن	٤ کی از اینجا?
خواندن	۵ هیچ کدام از این آقایان فارسی نــــ.

#### LESSON 17

Prepositions. Prepositions in Persian fall into two groups: those used without being connected to their noun by an ézâfé link, and those which require an ézâfé after them. The ones without an ézâfé are pure Persian prepositions proper; those linked by an ézâfé to their noun are usually adverbs, nouns, adjectives, or foreign words borrowed and used as prepositions.

(a) Prepositions which do not take the ezâfe:

```
ب- به b\dot{e} (written joined or separate) to b\hat{a} with b\hat{a} with az from b\hat{i} without جز joz instead of, except for
```

(b) Prepositions always joined by an ezâfe to the noun they govern:

#### Note:

- (a) بشت " behind " will be familiar to Latin scholars.
- (b) در dar has two meanings: (1) a door, and (2) in.
- (c) There are many more *ezâfe* prepositions—those given above are merely the most important.

Compound prepositions are common in Persian. They all take the *ézâfé*:

\* از توی امروی مع از توی امروی مع از توی مع از روی مع عدم مع عدم معلوب معلو

# فرهنگئ

table ميز ميز ميز carpet فرض farsh, قالي ghâlî to stand فرض istâdan, pres. stem -istto sit نسستن -نشين neshastan, pres. stem -neshînrug قاليجه ghâlîchê
balcony قاليجه bâlkon
key بالكن kelîd
wall عليد bokhârî

pan حراغ díg
light خراخ cherdgh
plate جراغ boshghdb
spoon بنقاب boshghdb
furniture قائيه asasíyé
tea خائيه chái
lunch العاد nahar
bed ناماد nahar
bed تخت\* خواب boghd'
seated نسسته neshasté
cup فنجان fenján

floor, ground زمين zamîn
a glass ليوان lîvân
letter of the alphabet حرف harf
street door, front door درب darb
lock درب ghofl
picture نقش naghsh
bowl طرف zarf

knife کارد kârd
lampshade آباژور âbâzhûr
fork جنگال changâl
consisting of عبارت از 'ebârat az
breakfast ناشتانی nâshtâ'î
translation ترجم tarjomé

Note: (a) عبارت از consisting of, is always used with the verb عبارت to be. which is always placed after the عبارت 'ebârat:

این کتاب عبارت است از ترجمه în ketâb 'ebârat ast az tarjomé This book consists of translation(s)

? اثاثه اش از چه عبارت بود ! asáseash az ché 'ebârat bûd

What did his furniture consist of?

(b) خارف bowl and حرف letter of the alphabet are Arabic words. We can either use their Arabic plurals خاروف zorûf and خروف horûf or else the Persian ones خرفها zarfhâ and خرفها harfhâ. With Arabic plurals we always have the choice of using the Persian plural. It is of course considered more educated to use the original Arabic one, though no foreigner would be criticized for not doing so.

# تمرين

- I. Translate and write out:
  - 1. A plate, a knife, and a cup are on the table.
  - 2. What is near the table?
  - 3. In this house there are three people (نفر). Outside the house is a garden, and in the garden there are flowers.

- 4. Did you see the key in the door? Yes, it was in the door, but I pulled it out.
- 5. What do you have (= take) for lunch every day?
- 6. Do you drink coffee with breakfast? In England they drink tea out of cups, but in Iran we drink it out of glasses. (Use the singular for "cup" and "glass".)
- 7. Who was standing behind the door?
- 8. I saw my friend with his father yesterday.
- 9. Did he say this in your presence?
- 10. No, he said it to his friends outside.
- 11. Inside this house there is a lot of furniture.
- 12. His house is situated near the Embassy.
- 13. What does his furniture consist of? Of chairs, tables and beds.
- 14. He goes to work without me, but it is very near.
- 15. Is the stove near the front door? Yes, it is situated behind the front door.
- 16. I went towards the mosque.
- 17. My brother was sitting inside the bank. He had a book in (his) hand.
- 18. I never have a hat on (my) head.
- 19. Who put the picture on that wall, near the window, under the light?
- 20. We took the rug off the carpet, and under it we put our money.
- 21. This is your room, and this big bed is for you.

II. From the examples below, pick out the prepositional constructions requiring the ézâfé. Then mark that ézâfé with an \* asterisk. Say how the ézâfé is pronounced in each case:

#### LESSON 17a

The stressed prefix of the Present Tense, - mi-can be written separate in most verbs. There is no difference in the pronunciation:

When this prefix is attached to a verb beginning with Tâ, the long sign over the lalef is dropped when the mi- is joined; thus from رودن ávardan to bring, present stem -آور--âvar-, we have

We must write as one word, dropping the I dummy alef, all verbs beginning in short a. Thus from انداختن andâkhtan to throw, we have ميندازم mîandâzam I throw.

We must write separately the Present of ايستادن istâdan, to stand. This is to avoid the clash of two long i's:

Irregular Present Stems—1st group: kh-z, kh-s, kh-sh.

Verbs whose infinitives end in the guttural combination -ختن -khtan change this ending into a sibilant sound, z, s, or sh, to form their Present Stem.

(Note: In the following list, instead of quoting the Past Stem after the infinitive, we shall omit this Stem and quote instead the Present Stem. This system of quoting verbs is the usual one found in Iranian grammars and dictionaries, so we shall keep to it for the rest of this manual, omitting the Past Stem which is always regularly formed.)

### GROUP 1a. kh-z

Infinitive		English Pr		it Stem	
آموختن	âmûkhtan	teach	-آموز-	-âmûz-	
آميختن	âmîkhtan	mix	-آميز -	-âmîz-	
آو يحنن	âvîkhta <b>n</b>	hang	-آو يز ـ	-âvîz-	
ساختن	sâkhtan	make	-ساز -	-sâz-	
سوختن	sûkhtan	burn (to be on fire)	-سوز-	-sûz-	
ر یختن	rîkhtan	pour	-ريز -	-rîz-	
انداختن	andâkhtan	throw	-انداز -	-andâz <b>-</b>	
پرداختن	pardâkhtan	pay	-پرداز -	-pardâz-	
پختن	pokhtan	cook	-پز -	-paz-	
	(root yours) also changes has				

(root vowel also changes here)

### GROUP 1b. Others

shenâkhtan know a person, -شناس- -shenâs"connaître"

-forûsh فروختن forûkhtan sell فروختن

Note: (a) خاخن shenâkhtan to know is used only like the French connaître or the Spanish conocer or the German kennen: to know a person, to be acquainted with. To know a thing or a fact is a different verb.

(b) In بختن pokhtan to cook, the vowel also changes in forming the Present Stem: -بز- -paz-.

# فرهنگئ

ice يخ yakh wind باد bad donya دنيا ,jahan جهان donya fall (-افت-) oftadan, -oftor c kûh م or کوه hill. mountain \ \ \ \ \ \ kob bârân باران a plain دشت dasht it's snowing برف ميايد barf mîdyad tabestan تابستان spring بهار bahâr little, few Lam keshvar کشور road داه rah railway راه \* آهن rah-e-ahan -kenar-é کنار\* beside namak غک salt

tokhm تخم sabzė سبزه sabzė sea دريا daryâ rûdkhâné رودخانہ, rûdkhâné it's raining باران میاید bârân mîâyad barf برف snow zemestân زمستان pá'îz بائيز pá'îz climate آب و هوا âb o havâ déh ده village âhan آهن fasl فصل season, chapter (book) seasons, chapters فصول (Ar. pl.) fosûl فصلها (Pers. pl.) faslhâ derakht درخت *ârd* آرد flour bîâbân سامان mehmân میمان

#### TEXT

# فصول (فصلها)

در تابستان زمین خشک است ولی گاهی باران میاید. در ایران باران کم میاید ولی در کشورهای دیگر باران \* زیاد میاید. تابستان گرم است یا سرد؟ تابستان گسرم است. برف در فصل \* تابستان و پائیز میاید؟ نخیر برف در زمستان میاید و گاهی در بهار.

در تابستان \* خشک ما روی \* درختها و روی \* سبزهٔ باغ آب میریزیم. دوست \* ما پارسال درخت در باغ نداشت و در بهار تخم در زمین کاشت و آب روی \* تخمها ریخت: حالا درختهای \* خیلی کوچک دارد. زمستان گرم نیست – سرد است. در شهرهای \* ایران و در دشت برف \* زیاد میاید. کشورهائی در دنیا هست که (which) در زمستان برف ندارد ولی در ایران برف \* زیاد و باد \* سرد میاید. روی \* رودخانهها یخ هست.



(دماوند damâvand, highest mountain in Iran)

# تمرين

I. Answer each of these questions orally in Persian, then write your answer out:

۱ در کشورتان تابستان خیلی گرم است یا نه؟

۲ در کدام فصل برف میاید؟

۳ روی تخمهای کوچک چه میریزید؟

(i.e. "trees" in general) — در بیابان درخت هست؟ . درخت

۵ منزلتان در ده واقع است یا در شهر؟

ع در پائیز باد گرم است یا سرد؟

۷ ما در کشور \* خودمان دشتهای بزرگ داریم؟

## II. Translate orally and in writing:

- 1. He mixes flour, water, and salt and pours it into a cup. He cooks this on the fire.
- 2. He is standing near the door.
- 3. The fire is burning well.
- 4. What are you making? Will you sell it?
- 5. I know that man. He teaches my son Persian.
- 6. Why did he throw this paper out? I paid for it myself.
- 7. He is hanging the picture on the wall.
- 8. When did he sell his car?

## III. Put into the Present Tense:

## LESSON 18

## Present Stems ending in long vowels

Some present stems end in long vowels,  $l-\hat{a}$  or  $-\hat{u}$ . e.g. The present stem of  $l-\hat{a}$  and of  $l-\hat{a}$  and of  $l-\hat{a}$  goftan to say is  $-l-\hat{a}$ .

In these verbs, because of the final vowel, the present undergoes slight changes, for phonetic reasons, before the addition of the personal endings - ع - د - يد - و etc. We shall take منان and كنن as models. All verbs whose present stems end in -اد - ه والله المنان, and all verbs with present stems ending in - ي الكنن على المنان على المنان على المنان المنان على المنان عل

To come		To say				
	amada آمدن	in.	gofta گفتن	in		
	-amad آمد	past stem	-goft گفت <b>-</b>	<i>goft</i> - past stem گفت-		
	-lâ- pr	es. stem	-gûگو-	- گو چو-		
(1)	ميايم	مياثيم	ميگويم	ميگوٽيم		
	mîâyam	mîâ'îm	<b>m</b> îgûyam	mîgû'îm		
(2)	ميائيد	ميائيد	ميكونيد	ميگوئيد		
	mîâ'îd	mîâ'îd	mîgû'îd	mîgû' <b>î</b> d		
	میاید	ميايند	ميگويد	ميگويند		
(3)	mîâyad	mîâyand	mîgûyad	mîgûyand		
	میاید	ميايد	ميگويد	ميگويد		
	mîâyad	mîâyad	mîgûyad	mîgûyad		

You will notice that (a) it is not the *endings* which are irregular, but the *stems*, (b) where the personal ending has the short vowel a, i.e. in the cases of the 1st singular and 3rd singular and plural:

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
(1) & & - & & - \\
(2) & & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
(3) & & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& - & \\
& & - & \\
& & - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - & \\
& - &$$

we put the consonant -y---- between the stem and the personal ending. It is easier to say the word with this --- glide-vowel put in. (c) Where the personal ending has the long vowel  $\cdot$   $\cdot$   $\cdot$  i.e. in the cases of the 1st plural and 2nd singular and plural:

$$(3)$$
 — —

we put a 'hamzé, resting over a "bearer", a bearer being, you will remember, like an undotted ; b, thus:

:

This: is pronounced as a glottal stop, like the letter ? 'ain.

#### Pronounce:

میگونید (Catch your breath on the hamzé) mîgû'îd میگونیم migû'îm میانید migû'îm

But pronounce a -y- glide in these ones:

mîâyam ميگو mîgûyam مياي mîâyad ميايد mîgûyand

There is no glottal stop, no catch of the breath, in these last four examples. Be careful to see and hear the difference in:

Glottal Stop			-y- Glide	
ميائيد	ميگوڻيد	and	ميايد	ميگويد
mîâ'îd	mîgû'îd		mîâyad	mîgûyad
you come	you say		he comes	he says
مياثيم	ميگوڻيم	and	ميايم	ميگويم
mเิล้'เิท	mîgû'îm		mîâyam	mîgûyam
we come	we say		I come	I say

Irregular Present Stems-2nd group: ûdan-â

Verbs whose infinitive ends in -ودن -ûdan take a Present Stem in -l- -â- and conjugate exactly like آمدن âmadan above in the present tense:

Infinitive	English	Present Stem
farmûdan فرمودن	command	-farmâفرما-
namûdan نمودن	show	-ان <i>: -namâ</i> -

increase افز ودن -afzd- افزا- -afzd- افزا- -afzd- ازمودن می dzmūdan test, examine آزمودن بوونسپر pêimūdan measure -پیا- -pēimā- اون zādan bear young (animals) -از- -zd-

(the infinitive has the present stem vowel here)

Note that the irregularities we are listing concern the present tense only: the past tense of all verbs is always regular in Persian.

## EXPRESSIONS 'ebârât

(a) إن من يد ché farmûdîd ?
إن الله ché farmûdîd khânom ? (to a lady) إن د أما ين د ché farmûdîd âghâ ? (to a gentleman)

These expressions, meaning literally "What did you command?" are used in polite conversation to mean "What did you say?".

(b) إله! balé? ("Yes?") said with a rise in the voice: balé? means "I beg your pardon—what did you say?".

We can use (i) and (ii) together:

balé, ché farmûdîd? Excuse me, but what did you say?

(c) خواهش میکم  $kh\hat{a}hesh$   $m\hat{a}konam$  Please (requesting something):

خواهش میکنم راه \* شمیران کجاست؟ khahesh mîkonam — râḥ-é-shemiran kojast ?

Excuse me—where is the Shemiran road? (Shemiran is a northern suburb of Tehran)

# تمرين

I. In the following verbs in the present tense, a " bearer" has been written without its necessary mark, ' hamzé or two dots (-y- glide) as the case may be. Fill in the hamzé or the -y- glide as necessary:

II. Now check your answers to Ex. I with the Key at the back of the book: correct your mistakes.

Now pronounce carefully each example of Ex. I:

III. Put into the present tense:

## LESSON 18a

#### Numbers

Cardinal:

Ordinal:

Note: (a) Apart from J 1st avval, which is taken from Arabic, all ordinal numbers are formed by adding the syllable - - $\delta m$  to the cardinal number. This - - $\delta m$  is stressed. (b) The ordinals are adjectives, and are joined to the noun they qualify, by the  $\ell z \hat{a} f \hat{e}$ :

درس \* چهارم dars-é-chahâròm the fourth lesson درس \* چهارم safhé-yé-panjòm the fifth page صفحة پنجم jeld-é-hashtòm the eighth volume

(c) The cardinals are always used with the noun in the singular. We say اسبا asbhâ horses, but with a number it is singular, thus: جبار اسب chahâr asb four horses.

shesh ketâb va panj ghalam "six book and five pen"

When the noun denotes *people*, we often use the word نفر nafar persons

between the number and the noun. When the noun denotes things or animals, we can use

៤ tâ pieces

in the same position:

ا پنج نفر ایرانی و دو نفر انگلیسی هفت نفرند panj nafar îrânî va do nafar inglîsî haft nafarand Five Iranians and two Englishmen are seven people

۲ این شش تا قلم و آن سه تاکتاب را بایشان دادم

în shesh tâ ghalam va ân sé tâ ketâb râ bé-îshân dâdam I gave them these six pens and those three books

The cardinal numbers answer the questions

? جند نفر؟ ? chéghadr جند نفر؟ جند؟ دhánd nafar جند نفر؟ و chéghadr جند تا؟

? جقدر cheghadr? also means the singular: How much? This expression never takes نفر nafar or ن tâ after it.

The ordinal numbers answer the question, untranslatable into English:

? " the how-manyeth?" cf. the German adjective der Wievielte?

چندسن chandomîn is an adjective, but it always precedes its noun and has no ézâfé

Read these examples for practice:

۱ دیروز چند نفر دوست آمدند؟ شش نفر آمدند
 ۲ چند تا کتاب خواندید؟ من دو تا خواندم ولی دوستم سه تا خواند
 ۳ این چندمین درس است؟ ششم یا هفتم؟ این درس هفتم است
 چقدر پول دارید؟ من هیچ پول ندارم

# تمرين

- I. Write in Persian numerals (e.g. 6 + 4 = 10 becomes  $1 \cdot = 1 + 5$ ):
  - (a)  $2 \times 3 = 6$  (b)  $6\frac{1}{2} + 3\frac{1}{2} = 10$  (c) 6th, 7th, and 8th
- II. Write in words in Persian:
  - (a) eighth (b) first (c) second (d) third

as necessary : تا or نفر as necessary

#### LESSON 19

The Subjunctive

The subjunctive mood is used a great deal in Persian. By itself, a subjunctive verb has the meaning "may" or "might" or "let me (do) ——".

The Present Subjunctive is formed by taking the Present Tense, dropping the - mî- prefix, and substituting the Subjunctive Prefix - bé. This - bé is usually joined in writing.

Compare, for example, the Present Tense with the Present Subjunctive Tense of

رفتن raftan to go Present Stem - -- -rav-

Present Tense

Present Subjunctive Tense

#### SINGULAR

(1) بروم mîravam I go بروم béravam I may go (2) بروید mîravîd you go بروید béravîd you may go (3) برود mîravad he goes برود شاه mîravad it goes برود béravad it may go

#### PLURAL

(1) את e mîravîm we go

(2) ميرويد mîravîd you go

(3) يروند mîravand they go يروند béravand they may go يروند mîravad they go يروند béravand they may go

يروم béravîm we may go

رويد béravîd you may go

The ! be is always stressed. Pronounce:

békhânîm بخوانيم bégûyam بگويم béfarmâyand بفرمايند bénamâ'îd بنيائيد béfarmâyand

When the verb begins with  $\sqrt{1} \log a$  or  $\sqrt{1}$  short a, the  $-\frac{1}{2}$ becomes --, and the whole combination is pronounced يا bía or يا bía (the maddé is dropped) :

آ verbs : بيام bîâmûzand بياموزند bîâyam

ا verbs : بياندازد bîafzû'îm بيافزونيم bîandâzad

Before ايستادن îstâdan to stop, the به bé- is separated:

bé-îstam I may stop به ایستم

To make the negative of the Subjunctive, we first remove the -1 - be- or  $b\hat{i}$ -, and then replace it with the negative prefix: na-, or -: nay- before a vowel. This negative prefix is stressed here as elsewhere. Remember that the  $\rightarrow b\ell$  or bî is dropped in the Negative Present Subjunctive. So, for example :

Present Subjunctive **Affirmative** 

بگوئيد bégû'îd you may say bégûyad he may say بگوید bėgû'îm we may say بگونی

Present Subjunctive Negative

inagûyam I may not say نگوم begûyam I may not say انگوئيد nagû'îd you may not say nagûyad he may not say نگوید nagû'îm we may not say نگوئيم نگوئيد bégû'îd you may say نگوئيد nagû'îd you may not say نگويند bégûyand they may نگويند say say

The second person of the Subjunctive (both affirmative and negative) is used by itself as the Imperative or command form:

عن بگرئید béman bégû'îd Tell me باو نگوئید bé-û nagû'îd Don't tell him منزل بر وید manzel béravîd Go home اینجا نیائید înjâ nayâ'îd Do not come here شاب را بدهید ân kitâb râ bédehîd Give that book

Similarly, other persons (without pronouns) can be used to express the idea "let . . . ":

ير ود béravad let him go, he may go, may he go تگوئيم nagû'îm let us not say, may we not say

and the question form of the 1st person singular is very common, thus:

? جه بگوم ché bégûyam? What am I to say? What can I say?

Suffix --esh. Besides meaning his, her, or its (possessive), the suffix --esh can be added to prepositions. This usage is particularly common in colloquial speech:

(رسيدن porsidan, -ر-- pors- = to ask)

Prepositions normally taking the ézâfé after them drop their ézâfé if this --esh suffix is added:

If the preposition ends in a vowel, we put a  $-x^2 - y^2$  glide between it and the  $-x^2 - x^2$  to facilitate pronunciation:

My friend went instead of him/her dûstam bejâyesh raft دوستم بجایش رفت

The --esh suffix can also be added to verbs, to indicate the direct object of that verb:

In all the uses of -esh outlined above, we can use the corresponding plural suffix  $-esh\hat{a}n = them$  (animate and inanimate). This use is similarly colloquial:

ا بش گفتم I told him/her besh goftam بش گفتم ۲ بشان گفتم I told them beshân goftam

Were you at his/her house? shomâ pahlûyesh bûdîd?

Were you at their house? shoma pahlûyeshan bûdîd?

ا ندیدمش I didn't see him/her nadîdamesh ندیدمش

I didn't see them nadîdameshân نديلمان

Note: داشتن bûdan and داشتن dâshtan. Do not attempt yet to form the Present Subjunctives of these two verbs. They have special Subjunctive forms which we shall deal with later.

# تمرين

I. Put into the Present Subjunctive:

۳ میپرسید	۲ نمیایم	۱ میروم
ع نميخوريم	۵ میگوید	۽ ميکنند
۹ میپردازیم	۸ نمیکشد	۷ مینویسیم
	۱۰ نمیبزد	

- II. Make your answers to Ex. I Nos. 1, 7, 2, 3, v, and 4 negative subjunctive.
- III. Make your answers to Ex. I Nos. Y, F, A, and 1. affirmative subjunctive.
- IV. Write in Persian and then read aloud, paying attention to the stressed prefixes:
  - 1. May I go out?
  - 2. What am I to say?
  - 3. Come here.
  - 4. Where is he to go?
  - 5. Let's see him. (One word.)
  - 6. Don't take his money.

- 7. Let him not take his (own) money.
- 8. Say this after (= with) me.
- 9. Don't cook my dinner late tonight.
- 10. Why may I not pay?
- V. Put into the form using the suffix -- esh or -- eshân:

## VI. Translate Ex. V.



(Drawn from B. W. Robinson's "Persian Miniatures", by kind permission of the publishers, Bruno Cassirer, Ltd., Oxford.)

## LESSON 19a

Questions. We said in Lesson 13a that we make a question in Persian by raising the voice towards the end of the sentence (in speech) and (in writing) we occasionally, though by no means always, use a European question-mark reversed?. Not all Persian books, and very few Persian writers, bother about the? mark. Persian books printed in Europe usually do, of course, use?.

The order of words of the statement is not changed to make a question:

They saw him *ûrâ didand* اورا دیدند (falling tone)

Pid they see him? ûrâ didand? اورا دیدند؟ (rising, inquiring tone)

Question-words. Many questions in Persian, as in English, are introduced by question-words:

why? chérâ? جرا

what ? ché ? جہ چیز (colloquially chî ?) ché chîz ? چہ چیز

which ? kodâm ? كدام

who? kî? 5

when? kêi? S

where ? kojâ ؟ كجا

how? chétôur? جطور

how much/many ? chand ? چند chéghadr ? مقدر and the many compounds we can form from these words:

whose?  $m\hat{a}l-\hat{e}-k\hat{i}$ ?  $\mathcal{S}$  \* JL.

for what ? barâ-yé-ché ? براى \* چه

from where ? az kojâ ? از كجا until when ? tâ kêi ? تا كى and so forth.

When these words are used to form questions in Persian, we can put them at the beginning of the question, as in English:

۱ حسن از کجا آمد؟ ؟ To whom did he say this? الله کی این چیز را گفت؟ ؟ When are you coming tomorrow? شما فردا کی میائید؟ ؟ Why did you come today ؟ عرا امروز آمدید؟

But it is far more usual to put the question-word immediately before the verb, i.e. nearly at the end of the question:

In good conversational Persian this latter order is much better.

Indirect Speech. In English, we have two ways of indicating speech. We have Direct Speech:

(a) He said "I am ill"

and we have Indirect Speech or Reported Speech:

(b) He said that he was ill

These two sentences both mean exactly the same thing, but in (a) the exact words of the speaker, with no alteration in tense or person, are used. In (b) we merely get

a report of what the speaker said: the tense of the verb and the person of its subject are both changed to fit the report.

In Persian there is no distinction between Direct and Indirect Speech: we always use the *exact* words of the speaker.

" » Inverted commas are occasionally used in Persian: they are not obligatory.

Speech is usually introduced by the conjunction  $\leq k\ell$  "that". This word, like the inverted commas, is not obligatory.

#### Examine:

Exactly the same method is used to express questions in speech:

In the questions 1, 7, 7, and  $\epsilon$  above the ? may also be omitted.

The context of the speech usually indicates who is meant by the "', but the exact words of the speaker are always

used. As you see, the conjunction "" is not always translatable into English.

A question which requires an answer "yes" or "no" may be introduced by LT. This is an untranslatable question particle. It always appears as first word in the question clause:

If we wish to quote a yes-no question as speech, we usually introduce this question by  $\sqrt{1}$ , which is then translated as "whether" in English. Again, neither the  $\sim$  nor the  $\sqrt{1}$  is obligatory:

All the above, 1, 7, 7, and 2, can take either " " or ? or both together; and the *context* of the question tells us who is indicated by be shomed.

Again, the same method is used to express commands as quoted speech:

Go !	béravîd	بر و يد
He said "Go"	(goft béravîd	۱ گفت بروید
OR	goft béravîd goft béravîd	۲ گفت «بروید <sub>»</sub>
He told me/him/her/us/	goft ké béravîd	۳ گفت که بروید
you/them to go	goft ké béravîd	؛ گفت که ْ«بروید <sub>»</sub>

## Irregular Present Stems—3rd group: -stan verbs

Verbs whose infinitive ends in -stan nearly all have irregular Present Stems. Here are the most important irregularities encountered:

Group 3a. s-h				
Infini	tive	English	Pres	sent Stem
كاستن	kâstan	lessen	-کاھ-	-kâ <b>h-</b>
خواستن	khâstan	wish, want	-خواه-	-khâh-
جستن	jastan	jump	-ج-	-ja <u>h</u> -
رستن	rastan	escape	-رھ-	-ra <u>h</u> -
	G	ROUP 3b. s-nd		
بستن	bastan	tie, bind, close	-بند-	-band-
پيوستن	pêivastan	unite	-پيوند-	-pêivand-
GROUP 3c. s-n				
شكستن	shekastan	break	-شكن-	-shekan-
نشستن	neshastan	sit	-نشين <b>-</b>	-neshîn-
		(vow	el char	nge also here)

## GROUP 3d. Others

گسيختن	gosîkhtan (	break	-gosel - گسا-
گسيستن	gosîstan 🚶		
شستن	shostan	wash	-shûشو -
جستن	jostan	look for, seek	-jûجو-
خاستن	khâsta <b>n</b>	arise	-khîzخيز

In Group 3d above, note (a) گستن gosistan to break has an alternative form in the infinitive only—the present stem has only the one form. This verb is not as common as 3c شکستن shekastan. (b) In all these four verbs there is a vowel change as well as a consonant change. (c) Do not confuse

3a خواستن  $kh\hat{a}stan = \text{to wish (pres. stem} - خواه - -kh\hat{a}h$ ) with 3d خاستن  $kh\hat{a}stan$  (no mute - v here, N.B.) whose meaning is to arise, with the pres. stem خيز  $-kh\hat{a}z$ .

# TEXT مرد \* دانا و مرد \* پیاده

مردی دانا روزی بر سبزه کنار \* راهی نشسته بود. دید شخصی پیاده میاید. وقتی که این شخص نزدیک درد \* دانا رسید پرسید «از اینجا تا شهر چند ساعت راه است؟» مرد دانا گفت «راه بروید» آن شخص تعجب کرد و پرسید «چه فرمودید؟» مرد \* دانا جواب داد «گفتم راه بروید» مرد \* پیاده فکر کرد «این مرد دیوانه است» و بدون اینکه حرفی بزند بطرف شهر راه افتاد وقتی که قدری راه رفت مرد \* دانا صدا یش کرد و گفت «شا دو ساعته بشهر میرسید» شخص \* پیاده گفت «پس چرا زود تر نگفتید» مرد \* دانا گفت «چون اول نمیدانستم تند یا یواش راه میروید نمیتوانستم بگویم دیر یا زود بشهر میرسید ولی حالا که دیدم چطور راه میروید میدانم که دو ساعته بشهر میرسید».

# فرهنگ

sick, ill مریض marîz
seated نشسته neshasté
a few غند chand
walk { پیاده رفتن pîâdé raftan
walk عجب کردن pîâdé raftan
be surprised معجب کردن ta'ajjob
kardan
surprise نعجب ta'ajjob
a second time نعجب daf'é-yédovvòm
ask (of) برسیدن -پرسه porsîdan,
-pors- (ان)
then به

but ولى valî

now that حالا محالا موكز hâlâ kê

centre مركز markaz

wise ماع dânâ

fellow شخص shakhs

walking, on foot بياده pîâdê

when موقى مaghtî kê

after موقى مهد از ba'd az

moment موقى moughê'

grass موقع sabzê

a time منه daf'ê

think فكر كردن fekr kardan

as جون chûn

mad دیرانه divané
earlier, sooner, quicker زودتر
zûdtar
arrive رسیدن رسه rasidan, -rasspeak حرف زدن harf zadan
voice مدا عمدا sedd
call مدا کردن sedd kardan
know (a fact) دانستن ددان dânestan, -dân-

minute
moment } دقیقه daghighe
without a word بدون\* حرف زدن

bedûn-ê-harf-zadan
slow(ly) بواش yavâsh
hour, watch عاعت sâ'at
civilization عدن tamaddon
answer جواب

# تمرين

I. Answer these questions orally and in writing in Persian:

۳ مرد \* پیاده از مرد \* دانا چه پرسید؟ ؛ و مرد \* دانا چه جوابش داد؟ ۵ مرد \* دانا چرا این جواب را داد؟ چه چیز را نمیدانست؟

## II. Translate:

- 1. I don't know what his name is.
- 2. Did he say where he was going?
- 3. Tell him to go.
- 4. Hassan said he had seen someone in the village, but he didn't know who it was.
- 5. Tell him to wash his hands.
- III. Translate (a) into English Direct Speech, then (b) into English Indirect Speech:

e.g.

- (a) He said to him: "Go."
- (b) He told him to go.

۱ ازش پرسیدم که چرا اینجا هستید
 ۳ مرد فکر کرد که این شخص دیوانه است
 ۵ امروز آموختیم چند سال \* پیش ایران مرکز \* ممدن بود

#### LESSON 20

After the verbs "can, to be able to" and "want to" in English, we use the infinitive of the verb:

I can go
I am able to go
I want to go
I could go
I was able to go
I wanted to go

In all these examples, "go" and "to go" are infinitives in English.

In Persian, we do not use the infinitive in such cases, but the Present Subjunctive Tense (the -i  $b\acute{e}$ - tense) in the appropriate person, thus, for example:

נפף béravam that I may/might go can, to be able to:

Infinitive: توانستن tavânestan
Past Stem: توانست- tavânestPresent Stem: -توان- -tavân-

Thus the Present 1st person singular is (من) (man) mîtavânam I can, I am able to. The Past 1st person singular is (من) (man) tavânestam I could, I was able to.

to want to:

Infinitive: خواستن khâstan
Past Stem: خواست- khâstPresent Stem: -خواه- -khâh-

Present 1st singular (من) (man) mîkhâham I want to. Past 1st person singular (من) (man) khâstam I wanted to.

178

Examine:

man mîtavânam ânjâ béravam من ميتوانم آنجا بروم I am able to go there (literally, I am able that I go there) shomâ tavânestîd ânjâ béravîd شيا توانستيد آنجا برويد You were able to go (literally, that you might go) there ishân namîtavânand înjâ bîâyand ايشان نميتوانند اينجا بيايند They can't come (literally, They cannot, that they may come) here

kî mîkhâhad bâ man béravad ؟ کی میخواهد با من بر ود؟ که میخواهد با من بر ود؟ Who wants to go (literally, that he go) with me?

hîchkas nakhâst bédaftar béravad ه هیچکس نخواست بدفتر بر ود

Nobody wanted to go to the office

دوستم گفت که نمیخواهم دیر برسم dûstam goft kê namîkhâhad dîr bêrasad My friend said he didn't want to arrive late (OR: My friend said: "I don't want...")

The خواستن or خواستن form (called the auxiliary verb) can come just before the subjunctive verb:

shomâ înjâ mîkhâhîd beneshînîd ? إشا اينجا ميخواهيد بنشينيد؟ • Do you want to sit here

or just after its own subject:

shomâ mîkhâhîd înjâ beneshînîd ? مشا ميخواهيد اينجا بنشينيد؟ ك Do you want to sit here?

The subjunctive verb can be *understood*, of course, just as the corresponding infinitive can in English:

mîkhâham begûyam valî namîtavânam میخواهم بگویم و لی نمیتوانم I want to speak, but I can't ۱۰ راه نمبر وند. نميخواهند râh namîravand. namîkhâhand They aren't walking. They don't want to

After the verb "want to" in English, we often have an object before the infinitive:

I want him to write (i.e. I don't want to write myself)

This is translated by putting the object between the auxiliary and the subjunctive verb, but in the subject form: i.e. no 1--râ particle attached to the noun or pronoun. For further clarity a  $\lesssim k\ell$  particle can be used:

I want him to write (literally. I want that he should write)

OR

(man mîkhâham û bénevîsad

OR

he should write)

OR

man mîkhâham ké û bénevîsad

A further word about خواستن: it can of course take an ordinary direct object, a: "want" can in English:

۱۳ سیب میخواهم I want an apple sîb mîkhâham

## I. Translate:

- 1. Can he write Persian? Yes, he can.
- 2. Does he want to learn this? No, he doesn't (want).
- 3. Where do you want to sit?
- 4. I can't wash (my) hands without water.
- 5. Why don't you want him to see your house?
- 6. Nobody could tell me this.

- 7. Do you want dinner now?
- 8. He wanted to sleep, but he couldn't.
- 9. Yesterday he was very ill and couldn't eat anything.
- 10. When did you want to see us? Are we to come early?
- II. Put the infinitive on the left into the correct subjunctive form to fit the sentence on the right:

- III. (a) Put into the Past Tense Ex. II Nos. 1, 7, 2, and A.
  - (b) Put into the Present Tense Ex. II No. 7.

## LESSON 20a

To ask. The English verb "to ask" is translated into Persian in two ways:

khâstan (to want) = to request, ask for something خواستن رسيدن porsidan = to ask a question

They both take it az (from) with their personal object:

Irregular Present Stems—verbs in בנ -dan

Verbs whose infinitive ends in نع- -dan fall into various groups:

- (a) בניט -ûdan verbs are the second group of irregulars. See Lesson 18 for these.
- (b) عبدن -idan verbs are all regular, forming their present stems by dropping the بيدن -idan, except those listed below under (c) and (d).
- (c) The following verbs in --- dan have present stems in --- and occasionally other irregularities as well, which should be carefully noted:

Infinitive		English	Present Stem
زدن	zadan	hit	-ijzan-
<b>ک</b> رد <b>ن</b>	kardan	do	-ن5kon=
آفريدن	âfarîdan	create	- <i>âfarîii</i> - آفرين
ديدن	dîdan	see	-بين <i>bîn</i> -
چيدن	chîdan	arrange, lay out	-نيchîn-

(d) The following verbs in -عن -dan have present stems in -y- -v- as well as a vowel change:

Infinitive	English	Present Stem
shenîdan شنيدن	hear	-shenavشنو-
shodan شدن	become	-shavشو-

Compound Verbs. You will probably have noticed that we have learned comparatively few verbs, so far. Persian has very few simple verbs; it uses simple verbs combined with other words, usually nouns or adjectives, making compound verbs.

## Compound Verbs formed with كردن kardan to do

wait (for)	sabr kardan (barâyê)	صبر کردن (برای)
thank (to somebody)	tashakkor k. (az kasî)	تشکر کردن (از کسی)
speak	sohbat k.	صحبت کردن
work	kâr k.	کار کردن
accept, agree	ghabûl k.	<b>قبول</b> كردن
throw out, reject	bîrûn k.	<b>بیر ون</b> کرد <b>ن</b>
prepare	hâzer k.	حاضر كردن
arrange	dorost k.	درست کردن
live (in a place)	manzel k.	منزل كردن
live (exist)	zendegî k.	زندگی کردن
move off	harakat k.	حرکت کردن
A	∫sa'î k.	سعی کردن
try	kûshesh k.	كوشش كردن
open	bâz k.	باز کردن
find	pêidâ k.	پیدا کردن
think	fekr k.	فکر کرد <sup>ن</sup>
help (to somebody)	komak k. (bé kasî)	کک کردن (بکس)
change	'avaz k.	عوض كردن

Compound verbs form all the usual tenses, by inflecting the verb half of the compound, which is never separated. The Subjunctive, and hence also the Imperative, of a Compound Verb has no -! bé- prefix; compare

## ا ميتوانم اينرا بكنم mîtavânam înrâ békonam I can do this

with

۲ میتوانم فارسی صحبت کنم mîtavânam fârsî sohbat konam I can speak Persian



Let us examine a typical Compound Verb, تشكر كردن tashakkor k. " to thank" in all its parts, as an example:

Infinitive : تشكر كردن tashakkor k. to thank

Past Stem : -ندکر کرد- t. kard-Pres. Stem : -ند- کشکر t. -kon-

Pres. Tense: تشکر میکنه t. mîkonam (etc.) I thank
Past Tense: تشکر کردم
t. kardam (etc.) I thanked
Subjunctive: تشکر کنه t. konam (etc.) may I thank
Imperative: تشکر کنید
t. konîd Thank (someone)

The negative prefix -3 nà- is added of course in the usual way to the verbal element of the compound. Remember that the non-verbal element of the compound never changes and never separates itself from the verbal element.

If we wish to suffix --esh or خان -eshân (him or them) as a direct object to a Compound Verb, we attach the suffix to the non-verbal element:

Throw it out! bîrûnesh konîd بير ونش كنيد I didn't open them bâzeshân nàkardam بازشان نكردم

## Text

## صحبت

دیروز با یک آقا صحبت کردم که اسمش علی است و ازش پرسیدم که شیا کجا منزل میکنید؟

من: على من ميدانم كه شها چه كار ميكنيد ولى نميدانم كه شها كجا منزل ميكنيد

على: چند وقت \* پیش وقتیکه در شهر منزل کردم منزلم در خیابان \* شاه بود و لی حال در شمیران در یک کوچهٔ کوچک منزل میکم. اسم \* این کوچه کوچهٔ تهران است

من: كُوچة تهران - صبركنيد - آن نه كوچة كوچك نزديك \* دفتر \* خودتان است؟

على: بله. من خواستم براى \* تابستان نه در خود \* شهر كه خيلى گرم است زندگى كنم و باين سبب منزل \* خودم را عوض كردم. شما امشب وقت داريد بمنزل \* من بيائيد شام بخوريد؟ خوب. پس اميدوارم شما را امشب ببينم

شها را اسشب ببینم من: از التفات \* شمها خیلی تشکر میکنم و خو شوقتم که می آییم علم: بامید \* دیدار

# فرهنگك

conversation حجبت solbat
to study درس خواندن dare ا
salary حقوق hoghagh
kindness التفات eltefât
for your kindness ان النفادة \* شما az eltefât-é-shomâ

don't mention it (lit. it's nothing) جیزی نیست chîzî nîst
hope امید omîd
I hope (I-am-hopeful) امیدوارم
omîdvâram
school مدرسه madrasi
too much زیاد عثقت تثقیت

# تمرين

I. Answer: javâb bédehîd جواب بدهيد

۱۰ بگوئید که چند سال در مدرسه درس خواندید

## II. Translate:

1. He moved.

4. Get the dinner ready.

2. Let him move.

5. Where do you live?

3. Am I to speak?

III. Give the Subjunctives of:

- IV. Translate, taking care with "ask":
  - 1. He asked me for an apple.
  - 2. He asked me what the time was. (Time here = hour.)
  - 3. Ask him where he lives.
  - 4. Don't ask for money.
  - 5. He asked too much for his fruit.

#### LESSON 21

Comparison of adjectives and adverbs. There is no difference in form between adjectives and adverbs in Persian:  $kh\hat{u}b = \text{good or well, } bad = \text{bad or badly.}$ 

To form the comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs, we add the suffix  $\vec{j}$ --tar to the simple form of that adjective or adverb. To form the superlative, we suffix  $\vec{j}$ --tarîn to the simple form.

#### Examine:

There are only two irregular comparisons:

Note: (a) The comparative form of the adjective follows the noun it qualifies, and behaves exactly like the simple (positive) form, taking the \(\ell z \hat{a} f \ell \), etc.:

a big house manzel-é-bozorg منزل \* بزرگ a bigger house manzel-é-bozorgtar منزل \* بزرگتر some good place jâ'î khûb جائی خوب جائی جنر some better place jâ'î behtar

(b) The superlative adjective always precedes the noun it qualifies, and there is no ezafé. We can, of course, because

of its meaning, never have an indefinite suffix associated with the superlative. The superlative always means the best, the biggest, etc.:

This is the biggest house این بزرگترین منزل است in bozorgtarîn manzel ast

That is the smallest boy آن کوچکترین پسر است

an kûchektarîn pesar ast

## (c) than = از az or $t\hat{a}$ :

This book was dearer than that one این کتاب گرانتر از آن یکی بود în ketâb gerântar az ân yekî bûd

"too much" and "too". These English expressions such as in "too much money" and "too good", are not easily expressed in Persian. As a rule we use, for

too much money 
$$\begin{cases} p\hat{u}l - \hat{e} - z\hat{u}dd & \text{ for } \\ \text{OR} \\ p\hat{u}l - \hat{e} - kh\hat{e}il\hat{u} & z\hat{u}dd & \text{ for } \\ \text{too good} & kh\hat{e}il\hat{u} & kh\hat{u}b & \text{ for } \\ \text{too good} \end{cases}$$

Both these Persian expressions really only mean very much and very. Nevertheless, we have to make do with them, as they are the nearest we can get to the English idea.

## Numbers 11-20:

Cardinal			Ordinal		
11	1.1	يازده <i>yâzda<u>h</u> ,</i>	<b>11</b> th	yâzdahòm يازدهم	
<b>1</b> 2	1 7	davâzdaḥ دوازده	<b>12</b> th	davazdahòm دوازدهم	
13	١٣	sîzda <u>h</u> سيزده	<b>1</b> 3th	sîzdahòm سيزدهم	
14	١٤	ده chahârda <u>h</u>	14th	chahârdahòm چهاردهم	
15	10	pânzda <u>h</u> پازده	<b>15th</b>	pânzdahòm پازدهم	

16	18	shânzdaḥ شانزده	ردهم 16th	shânzdahòm
17	1 🗸	hevdah هفده	هم 17th	is hevdahòm
18	1 ^	hejdah هجده	دهم 18th	hejdahòm هجا
19	19	nûzda <u>h</u> نوزده	دهم 19th	nûzdahòm نوز
20	۲.	بیست $b \hat{\imath} s t$	20th	يىس bîstòm

More about the comparison of adjectives and adverbs. Some complex adjectives and adverbs, as in English, do not add suffixes but form their comparative and superlative degrees with the use of:

more bîshtar بیٹتر سمترین most bîshtarîn

Thus:

pleasant (lit. pleasure-bringing) ncshât-âvar نشاط آور more pleasant bîshtar neshât-âvar ابیشتر نشاط آور ترین most pleasant neshât-âvar tarin نشاط آور ترین interesting (lit. worthy of note) ghâbel-é-tavajjoh قابل \* توجه more interesting bîshtar gh. بیشتر قابل \* توجه .

قابل \* توجه ترین most interesting ghabel-é ta-tarvajjoh tarin

In colloquial Persian, the superlative is often expressed by using the comparative degree followed by as hamé "of all" or "than all", especially when the adjective is the complement of the verb to be:

این میز بزرگتر از همه است = این بزرگترین میز است  $\hat{n}$  bozorgtarîn mîz ast = în mîz bozorgtar az hamé ast This table is the biggest

# فرهنگئ

khûb خوب good better بہتر behtar best بہترین behtarin zíâd زیاد much bishtar بیشتر bîshtarîn بيشترين bîshtarîn khoshhâl خوشىحال sarkash سرکش sarkash old (of people) پير pîr § new عازه tâzė عازه jadîd orange (colour) نارنجى nâranjî moshkel مشكل gerân گران expensive ghahve'i-rang قهو های دنگ brown ابی abî آبی blue گلابی golâbî sard سرد cold hot (water, food, etc.) בול dâgh tang تنگ tang bright, alight, light (of colours) roushan روشن out, extinguished (of lights, khâmûsh خاموش (fires târîk تاریک târîk khâlî خالي empty heavy, thick سنگين sangin alî عالي excellent bahush باموش bahush torkî ترکی Turkish rast روسی Russian Italian ايتاليائي ٤٤٨١٤٨٠٤ hendî مندي hendî

forbidden ممنوع mamnû' motashakker متشكر mamnûn ma'lûm مملوع dorost درست important mohemm ا نبل tambal نبل tambal تنبل lazy nounced -mb-) bad(ly) { بد bad خراب khardb pleasant نشاط آور neshât-âvar bîchâré بيچاره doulatmand دولتمند boland بلند boland javan جوان kohné کہنہ (of things) کہنہ ghermez قرمز black سياه sidh easy آسان Asan arzan ارزان cheap pashmi بشمى white سفيد sefid kam کم (little (adverb) a little (adverb) کسی kami garm گرم warm, hot shol شىل loose full y por thin, light (weight) - sabok khoshhål خوشحال bîfahm بى فىم mesrf مصرى Egyptian farânsavî فرانسوى French German الماني dlmans

§ پیر pîr " old " always precedes its noun : an old man pîr-é-mard پیر \* مرد an old woman pîr-é-zan پیر \* زن Pakistani باکستانی pākestānī American آمریکائی amrīkā'ī kind, gentle ملتفت moltafeī sorry متاسف mola'assef Ali على 'ali cat على gorbć successful موفق movaffagh famous معروف ma'arûf ready, present حاضر hâzer absent عايب ghâyeb people مردم mardòm always ميشه hamîshé

تمرين

## I. Example:

این منزل بلند است؛ منزل \* شها بلندتراست ولی منز لم بلندترین منزل است. ۱ من باهوش هستم؛ او — است ولی شها — هستید.

٢ كتاب \* اول سبك است؛ كتاب \* دوم --- است ولى كتاب \* سوم -- است.

۳ علی چای \* داغ میخورد؛ من چایم -- میخورم ولی برادرم از همه -میخورد.

ه من کم میگیرم؛ شها --- میگیرید ولی این شخص \* بیچاره --- میگیرد.
 ه قرمز روشن است؛ زرد --- است ولی سفید --- رنگ است.

## II. Translate:

- 1. Who is the richest man in this town?
- 2. Ali is rich, but you are much richer.
- 3. The eleventh chapter is more interesting than the third.
- 4. Which book was most important?
- 5. Old people know better than young ones.
- 6. I can walk faster than you.
- 7. Can you give me a cheaper one than this?

- 8. He always arrives at the office earlier than you; does he have a faster car than yours?
- 9. Why does the cat always sit on the most comfortable chair?

#### LESSON 21a

✓ relative. In the sentences:

- (a) The man who came here yesterday was my friend.
- (b) Give me the book which you bought.
- (c) Did you go to the place where I sent you? the expressions the man who, the book which, and the place where are called relative expressions.

They are all expressed in the same way in Persian:

مردی که دیروز اینجا آمد دوست \* من بود مردی که دیروز اینجا آمد دوست \* من بود mardî kê dîrûz înjû âmad dûst-ê-man bûd

The man who came here yesterday was my friend

کتابی که خریدید به من بدهید kitâbî ké kharîdîd bé man bédéhîd Give me the book which you bought

م آنجائی که من شیا را فرستادم رفتید؟ شمازه kė man shoma ra ferestadam raftid ? Did you go to the place where I sent you?

### You will notice:

(a) We attach a 3- -2 suffix to the noun beginning the relative expression. If the noun ends in a vowel, or if it carries a 4- plural or 1- definite direct object suffix, we put

a : hamzé on a bearer before the  $\omega$ - -1, and pronounce a glottal stop.

(b) After the  $\mathcal{L}$ - $\hat{\imath}$  or  $\hat{\mathcal{L}}$ - $\hat{\imath}$  we have  $\mathcal{L}$  which we have already met in Speech (Lesson 19a). The  $\mathcal{L}$ - $\hat{\imath}$  or  $\hat{\mathcal{L}}$ - $\hat{\imath}$  may be written together with the  $\mathcal{L}$  ke as one word:

Here are some further examples of relatives:

ا نوکریکه برای \* ما کار میکند اسش حسن است nôkarîkê barâ-yê-mâ kâr mîkonad esmesh hasan ast Hassan is the name of the servant who works for us

... وقتيكه من آنجا بودم اينرا بش گفتم... vaghtîkê man ânjâ bûdam înrâ besh goftam...

When I was there ("The time that I was there") I said this to him...

ع زنهائی را که اینجا منزل میکنند میشناسید؟

zanhâ 'î-râ ké înjâ manzel mîkonand mîshenâsîd?

Do you know the women who live here?

ان کاردی را که من باو فروختم کجاست؟ An kârdî râ ké man bé-û forûkhtam kojûst?

Where is that knife (which) I sold to him?

مر جائی که میخراهید بر وید har jâ'î ké mîkhâhîd béravîd

Go wherever (" every place that ") you wish

### Distinguish between:

Interrogative

اشياك اينجا هستيد؟

shomâ kêi înjâ hastîd ?

When (at what time) will

you be here ?

بمن بگوئید که از کجا میائید béman bégû'îd ké az kojâ mîâ'îd

Tell me where (what place) you're coming from

Relative

روقتی که شیا اینجا هستید . . . vaghtikė shomā injā hastīd . . . When (at the time that) you are here . . .

از جائیکه من میام az jâ'îkê man mîdyam . . .
The place I am coming from . . .

The relative does occur without رسية or أسنة or أسنة. in rare examples. We shall deal with these later.

## Irregular Present Stems—4th Group: f-b

Verbs whose infinitive ends in -افتن -âftan, عنت -âftan, عنت -âftan take present stems in -با- -âb-, -بن- -âb- respectively:

Infinitive	English	Present Stem
tâftan Ş تافتن	twist/shine	: -tab-
yâftan يانتن	$\mathbf{find}$	-يابyâb-
farîftan فريفتن	deceive	-farîbفريب
kûftan § کوفتن	beat, pound	-kûb كوب
رفتن roftan (short vowel)	sweep	-rabرو ب

انتن و tâftan and کونتن kûftan have also formed infinitives derived from their present stems: تابیدن tâbîdan and کوبیدن kûbîdan.

There are two exceptions to the rule governing this class of irregulars. The following verbs in -aftan have regular present stems in -i--af-:

bâftan, -bâf- to weave بافتن -بافshekâftan, -shekâf- to split شکافتن

## ebarat عبارات

chérâ (lit. why?) But yes! (after a negative question) چرا؟ dorost ast That's right درست است bébakhshîd Excuse me از التفات \* شیا خیل منونم

? ché kâr konam ? What (on earth) am I to do? سناسفم mota'assefam I'm sorry

Polite Speech. (a) When speaking respectfully of somebody (i.e. somebody whom we would normally call \$7 aghd Mr. or \$\displais khanom Mrs. or Miss) we use the 3rd person plural of the verb:

agha inja hastand ? كنا اينجا هستند؟ Is (lit. are) the gentleman here?

خانم نیامدند Madame didn't come khanom nayamadand

آقای \* تهرانی امروز کار نمیکنند Aghā-yé-teḥrānî emrūz kār nàmîkonand

Mr. Tehrani isn't (" aren't ") working today

and in such circumstances we correspondingly use ایشان shan they instead of the less polite ال a he or she:

او آمد a amad becomes ایشان آمدنه 'sshan amadand' He/she (lit. they) came

(b) When speaking to such people, we tend to substitute for the verb گفت to sav. and for man so ther verbs when used in Compound Verbs—especially kardan in this case—the verb

(-فرما-) قرمودن farmûdan, -farmû- to command e.g. :

What did you say (lit. command) sir ? إنه فرموديد آفا؟ ché farmûdîd âghâ ?

ممنونم از التفاتيكه فرموديد

I am grateful for the favour that you did (lit. commanded)

mamnûnam az eltefâtîkê farmûdîd

And similarly we have the expression

béfarmá'îd Command (me)

meaning "I am at your service. What can I do for you?" It is very often used when answering the telephone:

ببخشید – آقای \* و زیر هستند؟ بفرمائید آقا bébakhshîd — âghâyê vazîr hastand كه béfarmâ'îd âghâ Excuse me—is the Minister there ?—Yes, speaking; what can I do for you?

(c) Conversely, when referring to what I say myself, instead of گفتن goftan to say (and of course instead of فرمودن farmûdan to command, which would be inexcusable arrogance) I use the Compound Verb

عرض کردن 'arz kardan lit. to petition, to beg

If I may say so, you are mistaken عرض میکم که اشتباه فرمودید
(lit. I beg, you have commanded a mistake)

'arz mîkonam kê eshtêbâh farmûdîd (اشتباه) = error

May I (be permitted to) say that . . . . . . . کم که که . . . (subjunctive)

'arz konam kê . . . (subjunctive)

پنج کیلو عرض کردم ولی آقا شش فرمودند

panj kîlô 'arz kardam valî âghâ shesh farmûdand I said 5 kilos but the gentleman said 6

## فرهنگئ

to telephone تلفن کردن rtelefon k. number شماره shomârê
message رفیعپور (surname) پیغام
director مدیر modîr
possible ممکن momken

يداند bédânad (subjunctive of دانستن dânestan) " so that he should know " = in order to know. See text below.

In numerical series,

" a" الف " b' ع bé " c" ج jîm ح " d" ع dâl

## بخوانيد:

## صحبت در تلفن

الف: ببخشید خانم – این شماره تهران ۳۳۰ ٤۵ (سی و سه صفر چهل و پنج)

ب: بفرمانید خانم

الف: عرض كنم كه خواستم با آقاى \* مدير صحبت كنم

ب: متأسفم خانم حالا نيستند. ممكن است يك بيغام بفرمائيد؟

الف: خیلی متشکر هستم. عرض کنم که بایشان بفرمائید که حسن رفیعپور تلفن کرد بداند چه ساعاتی مکن است ایشان را ببیند.

ب: این روزهائی که آقا کار \* زیاد دارند مشکل است خانم ولی عرض میکنم که بهتر است فردا صبح خودشان بآقای \* مدیر تلفن بفرمایند چون امروز معلوم نیست چه روز و ساعتی آقا وقت دارند.

الف: خيلي خوب – فردا آقاي \* رفيعپور خودشان تلفن ميفرمايند. خيلي ممنونم

ب: خواهش میکنم خانم.

## تحو بوم

I. Put the two sentences together to form one relative sentence, e.g.:

> آن آقا را نمیشناسم + دیروز آمدند آن آقائی که دیروز آمدند نمیشناسم ۱ کتاب خریدید + عن بدهيد + هيچکس نميداند ۲ مجائی رفت ٣ كاشيكارى \* ايرانى خريديم + قشنگ است ه مردی این را گفت + دانا ست ۵ آقائی آمدند

+ يدر \* حسن هستند

II. Here are some sentences with relatives in them. In each case, write the underlined relative expression differently (the pronunciation remains unaltered, of course):

III. Translate your answers to Ex. I and II.

### IV. Translate:

- 1. Where is the boy who broke the window?
- 2. Wherever (Every place that) you go, you will be poor.
- 3. Timur the Lame امير تيمور گوركان amîr têimûr gûrakûn) was the worst king who ever (هرگز hargez) lived.
- 4. They have sold that picture which you said was very beautiful.
- 5. A man who does that is not my friend.

#### LESSON 22

### More Compound Verbs:

(a) Formed with داشتن dâshtan to have:

to like dûst dâshtan دوست داشتن remove, take away var d.

dare (+ subjunctive)	jor'at d.§	جرأت داشتن
feel pain	dard d.	درد داشتن
to want something	mêil d.	ميل داشتن
(What would you like?	ché mêil dârîd?	چه میل دارید؟

§ The hamzé is written over the alef, which is pronounced short, a. This is an Arabic word, spelt in the Arabic fashion. Hamzé never occurs over alef in pure Persian.

### (b) Formed with دادن dâdan to give:

shake hands	dast dâdan	دست دادن
teach	dars dd.	<b>د</b> رس دادن
give, cause trouble	za <u>h</u> mat dd.	زحمت دادن
give up, lose	az dast dd.	از دست دادن
give back	pas dd.	پس دادن
show	neshân dd.	نشان دادن
accomplish	anjâm dd.	انجام دادن

### (c) Formed with کشیدن kashîdan to draw:

take pains, trouble	za <u>h</u> mat kashîdan	زحمت كشيدن
be ashamed (of)	khejâlat ksh. (az)	خجالت كشيدن (از)
to last, endure	tûl ksh.	طول کشیدن
revolt	sar ksh.	سر کشیدن
bring forward	pîsh ksh.	پیش کشیدن

Note: Verbs formed with (b) دادن dâdan retain the -. bé- prefix in the Subjunctive:

Show me that anra beman neshan bedehid آرا بمن نشان بدهيد The Subjunctive of بودن to be

The stem of بودن bûdan from which we form the Subjunctive is -بائه- -bâsh-. To this we add the usual endings, omitting the customary -! bé- prefix. -! bé- is never prefixed to any part of بودن bûdan.

### to be - Present Subjunctive

<b>(1)</b>	bâsham	باشم	bâshîm	باشيم
(2)	bâshîd	باشيد	bâshîd	باشيد
(0)	bâshad	باشد	bâshand	باشند
(3).	bâshad bâshad	ياشد	bâshad	ياشد

The usual negative suffix  $\vec{\cdot}$   $n\hat{a}$ - is added to make the Negative Subjunctive of this verb:  $n\hat{a}b\hat{a}sham$ ,  $n\hat{a}b\hat{a}sh\hat{a}d$ , etc.

The stem -بائه- -bâsh- is in fact the original Present Stem of بودن bûdan, and there does exist a form of the Present Tense of بودن bûdan made regularly from this stem:

<b>(1)</b>	<b>m</b> îbâsham	ميباشم	mîbâshîd	ميباشيم
	mîbâshîd		mîbâshîd	ميباشيد
(0)	mîbâshad	ميباشد	mîbâshand	ميباشند
(3)	mîbâshad mîbâshad	ميباشد	mîbâshad	ميباشد

This form is rather rare and means to exist in everyday speech; it is only used in rather formal speech in its original meaning to be.

More about the Relative. If in English the "whom", "which", or "that" beginning the relative clause is governed by a preposition:

- (a) The box from which I got the money . . .
- (b) The boy you spoke with (with whom you spoke) ...
- (c) The man to (\* براى barâyê here) whom I wrote the letter . . .

we say it thus in Persian:

۲ پسریکه شما با او صحبت کردید . . .

pesarîkê shomâ bâ û sohbat kardîd . . .

lit. The boy that with him you spoke . . .

mardîkê barâ-yê-û (barâyesh) man nâmérâ neveshtam . . .

lit. The man who to him I wrote the letter . . .

#### You will notice:

- (a) The -2 or -2 ike which we met in the last lesson is the only relative particle used. There is no other one in Persian.
- (b) We follow the على -- با or با or با or با or با or با or whatever it is, and نا ân, با îshân or براى sanhâ as the case may be.
- (c) In English it is possible to cast the sentence containing a relative in a different way, and omit the relative word "whom", "which" or "that". The examples above could read, with the same meaning:
  - (a) The box I got the money from . . .
  - (b) The boy you spoke with . . .
  - (c) The man I wrote the letter to . . .

In Persian this is *not* possible: the relative word must always be present.

Whose, of which, of whom. These are possessive relatives and are expressed in Persian similarly to the prepositional relatives described above, but we use the \(\ell z \textit{af\ell}\) instead of a preposition:

The man who the son of him goes to this school . . .

(c) Those whose books are on the table can go آنهائیکه کتابهایشان روی \* میز است میتوانند بروند

OR

(literally) Those who their books or Those who the books of them is on the table . . .

## فرهنگئ

so much انقدر Anghadr nail (iron) ميخ mikh a port بندر bandar a well جاه châḥ Bandar Shah (a port) بندر شاه bandar-shâḥ

# تمرين

### Translate:

- 1. Where is the book you found this in?
- 2. The house I live in has a beautiful garden.
- 3. When Iran was the centre of civilization, she was very rich.
- 4. What is the name of the school your son goes to?

  The one where they teach Russian and Turkish?
- 5. The boat he spoke of in his letter arrived at Bandar Shah yesterday.

- 6. They draw the water we drink from wells.
- 7. Whose house is that? It belongs to the gentleman who teaches my son.
- 8. Which one do you like more, the one I showed you or the one you found?
- 9. I should like to thank the gentleman who took so much trouble with this work.
- 10. Does he have any pain in his foot (there) where the nail was that we found and removed yesterday?

#### LESSON 22a

How to translate -ing into Persian.

(a) The English continuous verbal forms "is talking", "were going", and so forth, cannot be exactly translated into Persian; we use the simple Present and Past Tenses instead:

He talks, or is talking او صحبت میکند a sohbat mîkonad We went, or were going ما رفتیم ma raftîm

There is, however, an *Imperfect Tense*. This is used to denote an action which continued for some time but was interrupted, or a repeated past action. It is easy to form, We prefix smic or smic to the ordinary Past Tense:

من باصفهان میرفتم وقتی که او را دیدم man bé-esfahân mîraftam vaghtîkê ûrâ dîdam I was going to Isfahan when I saw him

(i.e. my journey was interrupted by my seeing him)

معل\*ما میگفت . . . mo'allem-é-mâ mîgoft . . .

Our teacher used to say . . .

We can only use this device in the past. Examine:

ا من دیروز کار میکردم وقتیکه او پیش \* من دیروز کار میکردم وقتیکه او پیش \* من آمید برگفت . . . . man dîrûz من الله inîkardam vaghtîké û pisheman âmad o goft . . . . I was working yesterday when he came to me and said . . .

م آنجائیکه دوستهان در آن وقت منزل میکرد تصادف شد میران میکرد تصادف شد شمازهٔ ânjâ'îké dûstemân dar ân vaght manzel mîkard tasâdof shod (At the place) Where our friend was living at that time there was an accident

(b) If the -ing word is a noun, the subject or object of a verb, or if it is governed by a preposition, we use the Persian infinitive:

Subject of a verb:

۳ فارسی صحبت کردن آسان است ولی خواندن و نوشتن مشکیل است fârsî sohbat kardan âsân ast valî khândan o neveshtan moshkel ast

Speaking (to speak) Persian is easy, but to read and write (reading and writing) is difficult

Object of a Verb:

غ فارسی صحبت کردن را من دوست دارم و لی خواندن و نوشتنش را نمیدانم fârsî sohbat kardan râ man dûst dâram valî khândan o neveshtanesh râ nàmîdânam.

I like to speak (speaking) Persian but its reading and writing (to read and write it) I don't know

-ing Governed by a Preposition:

ه از برسیدن \* او میدانستم که . . . . az porsîdan-é-û mîdânestam ké . . . From his asking I knew that . . .

(c) If the -ing word is an adjective and is not preceded by the verb "to be" in English (i.e. is not an English Continuous Tense, see (a) above) then we use its exact Persian equivalent, the Present Participle. The Present

Participle is an adjective, and is formed by adding the suffix .... - andé (stressed) to the present stem of the verb.

Present Participle = Present Stem + - نده - - àndé Examples :

doing	konàndé	كننده
working	kâr konàndé	کارکننده
wishing	khâhàndé	خواهنده
having, possessing	dâràndé	دارنده
knowing	dânàndé	داننده
coming	âyàndé	آينده

This adjectival Present Participle can be used as an adjectival noun:

دارندهٔ کلید بمن گفت . . . . dâràndé-yé-kelîd béman goft . . .

The possessor of (He having) the key said to me . . .

Those running
The runners
Those who run

and you already know, from the verb to fly יָעַנִּני (--ֶרָ-) paridan, -par-:

پند paràndé (= a flying thing) a bird نام پندگان parandégân (flying things) birds which are used as nouns.

If the verbal adjective is in effect a relative expression, use the relative in Persian:

ashkhâsîké dar în deh manzel mîkonand . . .
The people who live in (living in) this village . . .

The adjective آينده âyàndé "coming" is used to mean "next" in expressions of time or of sequence:

next month mâḥ-e-âyànde ماه \* آينده (literally, the coming month)
next lesson dars-e-âyànde درس \* آينده next week hafte-ye-âyande هفته آينده hafte = week)
the future vaght-e-âyande

میچکس نمیداند که در زمان \* آینده چه میگذرد hîhkas namîdânad ké dar zaman-é-âyandé ché mîgozarad Nobody knows what will happen (pass) in the future

Irregular Present Stems—Group 5: -ordan -dr

Verbs whose infinitive ends in -ordan have present

There is one exception to this group: '-,-' bordan, -bar- to carry; this verb has a short a in its present stem instead of a long a.

## فرهنگئ

to ring a bell زنگ زدن zang zadan a bell زنگ zang Goodbye خدا حافظ khodå håfez (lit. God protect) to get pleasure (from) لذت بردن lezzat bordan (az) (از)

stems in -3 - -2r-:

God خدا khodd to happen اتفاق افتادن ettefågh oftddan Tabriz (city in N.W. Iran) تبريز tabris

## تمرين

I. In these sentences, put the bracketed verb into the correct past tense (i.e. with or without the Imperfect Prefix - mi-), e.g.:

Parviz was running from home to school when he saw us

#### II. Translate:

- 1. Do you like working in the garden?
- 2. Cooking is easy.
- 3. He gets a lot of pleasure from reading Italian.
- 4. Next month the bus coming from Tabriz will arrive an hour later.

### LESSON 23

The Relative—continued. When we have "whom", "that", or "which" as a relative, and it is the object of the verb following it:

- (a) This is the man (whom) I saw.
- (b) I gave you the book (which, that) I bought. we can translate with عن كه -îkê or عن كه -î kê as we have already learnt:

în hamân mardîst ké man dîdam § این همان مردیست که من دیدم ۲ کتابیکه خریدم بشــا دادم ۲ کتابیکه خریدم بشــا دادم ۲

### § Literally "the same (ممين) man who ..."

Relative without = -î or = -'î. We learned that the relative particle < ké does not usually occur without <--î or -'î -'î . <- ké does occur without <-- î or i--'î, but only in a rare and rather special kind of relative sentence. Compare:

barâdarîké în ketâb râ kharîd . . . . . . . ابرادری که این کتاب را خرید. . . . . (with الله عند) The brother who bought this book . . . with

barâdar ké în ketâb râ kharîd . . . . . . . . ۲ برادر که این کتاب را خرید . . . . . . (without ح- -î) The brother, who bought this book . . .

- In (a) we have what is called a *limiting relative*: it is implied that there are several brothers, but "that one who bought the book . . . ", etc.
- In (b) the relative  $\checkmark$   $k\acute{e}$  "who" does not limit the antecedent "brother"; there is only one brother, and he (incidentally) bought this book.

If you find this distinction a difficult one to grasp at first, work to this rule, until you get the habit of distinguishing:

If we cannot reasonably place a comma before the relative "who", "that", "which", etc., in the English, we need the suffix c-1 or c-1 in Persian.

If we can reasonably place a comma before the relative in English, we leave out the --î or --i in Persian.

More examples of limiting relatives:

ا كتابيكه من بيشتر دوست دارم ديوان \* حافظ است ketâbîké man bîshtâr dûst dâram dîvân-é-hâfez ast The book I like most is the " Divan " of Hafez

۲ شهریکه دیروز دیدیم قشنگ بنظر میاید shahrîké dîrûz dîdîm ghashang bénazar mîâyad

The city we saw yesterday appears to be (lit. comes to the eye) beautiful

And of non-limiting relatives:

۳ کتاب \* مثنوی که بزرگترین کتاب \* رومی است. . . . ketâb-é masnavî ké bozorgtarin kétâb-é rûmî ast . . .

The book "Masnavi", which is the greatest book of Rûmî...

ئ شہری که قشنگ بنظر میاید سر \* کوه واقع است shahri ké ghashang bénazar mîâyad sar-é-kûh vâghé' ast The city, which appears to be beautiful, is situated on the top of a hill

Polite Speech. (a) In formal speech it is considered more polite to refer to oneself not as نه man "I", but rather as bandé " slave". This word takes the 1st person singular of the verb, just as من man does:

(b) In similar circumstances we use instead of خما shomâ "you", خاب \* أو jenâb-ê-âlî "your excellency"—with the 2nd person of the verb, as with خما shomâ:

 (c) When referring respectfully to somebody, we tend to avoid the use of آمدن amadan to come and تشريف raftan to go. We use instead the noun تشريف tashrîf " presence" together with another verb, making a Compound Verb:

تشریف آوردن tashrîf âvardan = to bring one's presence (i.e. to come)

t. bordan = to take one's presence (i.e. to go)

and also

t. dashtan = to have one's presence (i.e. to be somewhere)

Examples:

۱ دیروز تلفن کردم و خانم فرمودند که جناب \* عالی تشریف ندارند dîrûz telefon kardam va khânom farmûdand kê jenâb-ê-âlî tashrîf nàdârand

Yesterday I telephoned and Madame said you were not in

When is Monsieur going ? إقاكى تشريف ميبرند؟ ' aghâ kêi tashrîf mîbarand?

Madame hasn't come yet خانم هنوز تشریف نیاورده اند khânom hanûz tashrîf nàyâvardéand

These details of polite Iranian conversation may seem to the Western reader extravagant or servile, but the simple fact is that they are in everyday use by all classes of Iranians, and are therefore important. Iranians are generous people and will always forgive a foreigner for inadequacies of speech, but will always be careful to use the appropriate mode of speech themselves, and will naturally expect the same from a fluent foreigner.

## فرهنگئ

tafan توفان storm safar سنفر necessary צֹכֹם lâzem یدر بزرگ grandfather pedarbozorg space of time •ور• douré havapêima مواپيما khatar خطر always ميشه hamishé thief כנב dozd foradgah فرودگاه airport mordé مرده dead خواهش کردن to request khahesh k. shotor شتر so (much) آنقدر ånghadr

بخوانيد:

## مسافرت کردن در ایران

در دورهٔ گذشته مساه ت کردن در بران مشکل و پر خطر بود. از تهران باصفهان با اسب یا شتر یک هفته دول میکشید. پدر بزرگم وقتی که جوان بود چند دفعه این سفر را کرد § وهمیشه از دزدان و طوفان که دو تا از بزرگترین خطرهای بیابان است خیلی میترسیدند.

ولی امروز آگــر بایران بروید مسافرت خیلی آسانتر است. از تهران باصفهان هوا پیما هست که مسافرتش بجای یک هفته یکساعت وقت میگیرد. چند هفته پیش برای دیدن دوستم به شیراز که یکی از قشنگترین شهرهای \* ایران است رفتم. ناشتائی در تهران خوردم – ناهار در فرودگاه \* اصفهان – و برای چای خوردن بشیراز رسیدم.

Note: From now on we will no longer mark the unwritten <code>&zdfe</code> with an asterisk, but leave it entirely unmarked, as it is in Persian writing and printing.

# تمرين

I.

### جواب بفرمائيد:

۱ در دورهٔ گذشته مسافرت کردن در ایران آسان بود یا مشکل؟

۲ وقتی که در دورهٔ گذشته مسافرت میکردند از چه چیزها میترسیدند؟

۳ در انگلستان بیابان هست؟

٤ با شتر مسافرت كردن نشاط آور است يا نه؟

۵ امروز در ایران چطور مسافرت میکنند؟

ع جناب عالى به اران تشریف رده اید؟

٧ ميل داريد كه آنجا تشريف ببريد؟

۸ جنابمالی با هواپیها مسافرت فرموده اید ؟

۹ وقتی که در انگلستان سفر میکنیم آیا ما از چیزی میترسیم؟

۱۰ یدر نزرگتان زنده اند یا نه؟

### II. Put into more polite forms:

١ من فردا بهلوى شها نميايم چون شها منزل نيستيد

۲ چه بش گفتید؟

٣ گفتم من نميتوانم بيايم

٤ اين شخص آمد و خواهش كرد من بش شهارة تلفن شها را بدهم

۵ برای شام شیا چه میل دارید من حاضر کنم؟

### III. Translate, giving particular attention to the relative:

- 1. The camel, which in the past was the most important animal in the desert, is now not so important for travelling.
- 2. Bring the chair which he has mended.

- 3. Have you travelled in the ship he was talking about?
- 4. This picture, which they bought yesterday, is one of the most beautiful I have ever seen.
- 5. At that time (= moment) he lived in Shiraz, which is an Iranian city.

#### LESSON 23a

The English language has two compound past tenses, formed with a part of "to have" and a Past Participle:

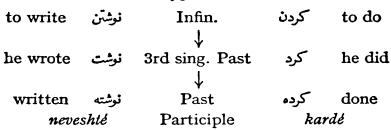
(a) I have written

"have", "had" is called the auxiliary
verb: "written" is the Past Participle of to write.

Tense 1 above is called in English the Perfect.

Tense 2 is called the Pluperfect or Past Perfect.

Persian can also form these two tenses. First, to form the Past Participle, we add • or 4- -é to the Past Stem of the verb. Thus, for two typical verbs:



Having got the Past Participle in this way with any verb, we use it together with an auxiliary to get the Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses.

The auxiliary verb we use in English is to have: but in Persian (this is most important) it is:

### bûdan to be بودن

I have written (lit. I am written) من نوشته ام man neveshté am

We have done (lit. we are done) ما كرده ايم ma kardé îm

I had written (lit. I was written) نوشته بودم neveshte bûdam

We haven't done (lit. we aren't done) نكرده ايم nàkardé îm

We hadn't done نكرده بودم nàkardé bûdîm

You will notice three points here: (a) in the Perfect Tense we use the short form of to be vector, written not as a suffix but detached, i.e. with its own lalef. Do not use the long form hastam, hastid, etc., as an auxiliary. (b) We attach the negative prefix -i-nd- to the Past Participle, not to the auxiliary verb, and (c) the Past Participle does not change to indicate tense or person: the auxiliary does that. Use the Present of the auxiliary verb and you have the Perfect Tense; use the Past of the auxiliary and you have the Pluperfect, or Past Perfect as it is sometimes called.

In Lesson 22 we gave the special Subjunctive Tense of باشيد to be: باشيد bâshâm, باشيد bâshîd, etc. This tense, used as an auxiliary, gives us the Perfect Subjunctive:

that I may have written که نوشته باشم ké neveshté bâsham that you should have seen که دیده باشید ké dîdé bâshîd that you might not have gone که شیا ترفته باشید ké shomâ nàrafté bâshîd

Notice that in this tense, as in the two other Perfect tenses, the negative suffix is added to the participle and not to the auxiliary. The Present Subjunctive of داشتن dâshtan "to have" is not used in modern Persian; instead we always use the Perfect Subjunctive, but with present meaning:

ا ميخواهم كه شيا اين را داشته باشيد mîkhâham ké shomâ înrâ dâshtê bâshîd

I want you to have this (main verb in the Present)

۲ میخواستم که شیا اینرا داشته باشید mîkhâstam kê shomd înrâ dâshtê bâshîd

I wanted you to have this (main verb in the Past)

The first three tenses we learned in this book, the Present, Past, and Present Subjunctive, are by far the most common and most useful in Persian. The three Perfect Tenses we have learned in this lesson are rarely used in ordinary conversation; but all the same it is necessary to know them, as they occur frequently in writing and occasionally in rather formal speech.

While we are on the question of the subjunctive, it would be as well to note that constructions of the following type require the next verb to be in the subjunctive, either the Present Subjunctive or the Perfect Subjunctive as the timesequence may require:

it is possible (that)
it is not possible
it is not certain
one hopes that
I hope

momken ast (ke) (که) مکن است (که) ghêir-é-momken ast غیر مکن است مکن نیست مکن نیست معلوم نیست ma'lûm nîst معلوم نیست omîd ast (ke) (که) امید است (که) omîdvâram امیدوارم

These constructions can all, as in English, be followed by "that" & ké. This is not obligatory. From the meaning of these few phrases: I hope that, it is not certain that, it is possible that, we can see that when an action or state of affairs is uncertain, doubtful, or is an idea or hypothesis rather than an established fact, we use the subjunctive to express it.

Examine:

omîdvâram ké bîa'îd امیدوارم که بیائید I hope that you may come
(i.e. it is not certain that you will come)
عرب مکن است که کارتان مونق باشد

ghêir-ê-momken ast kê kâretân movaffagh bâshad It is impossible that your work should be successful (i.e. the very idea of its being successful is impossible)

And similarly, after expressions of emotion, we use the subjunctive:

ت خیلی خوشحالم که دوستم آمده است khéilî khoshhalam ké dûstam âmadé ast. I am very glad that my friend has come

ئ متأسف بوديم كه پولرا نداشتيم mota' assef bûdîm ké pûlrâ nàdâshtîm We were sorry not to have the money (= that we did not have the money)

Conjunctions and Prepositions. Such prepositions as:
without بدون bedûn-ê- apart from, except for غير از ghêir az
for غير از barâ-yé- with با bâ instead of براى

after ببد از ba'ad az before ببد از ghabl az because of بسبب bé sabab-éin spite of  $b\hat{a}$  vojûd-e-e-vojûd = existence) can be made into conjunctions (i.e. to introduce clauses) by adding اینکه or این که înké. Compare:

Preposition

except for me غر از من ghêir az man after the war بعد از جنگ ba'ad az jang in spite of him, with him با او ba a

before the war قبل از جنگ ghabl az jang instead of him بجای او béjá-vé-û

for him برای او bara-yé-a Conjunction

apart from the fact that he came

غىر از اينكه آمد ghêir az înké âmad

after I went

بعد از اینکه رفتم ba'ad az înké raftam

although I went

با اینکه رفتم bâ înké raftam

before I go

قبل از اینکه بروم

ghabl az înké béravam

instead of going, he . . . بجای اینکه ترود

béjâ-yé-înké béravad . . .

because I went

برای اینکه رفتم barâyé-înké raftam so that I should go (subjunctive) برای اینکه بروم

lbarâyé-înké béravam

because of that because I went

بسبب اینکه رفتم

bésabab-é-ân

bésabab-é-înké raftam

without them unless they go

بدون اینکه بر وند

bedûn-é-îshân

bedûn-é-înké héravand

The preposition governs a noun or pronoun: the conjunction introduces a subject and its verb, i.e. a second clause.

## فرهنگئ

to weigh (کشیدن (کشد) kashidan, -kashweight وزن vazn think فكر كردن fekr k. it seems (seemed) to him good ... -bd بنظرش خوب ميايد . . . (آمد) nazaresh khûb mîdyad (âmad) . . . you seem to me to be . . . بنظرم bénazaram عيته ... امن shoma . . . hastid (lit. to my (...) you are نظر eye mostafd § مصطفى Mustapha برادرزن brother-in-law barddarzan finish, end قام كردن tamâm k.

bar در کشتن (بر - گرد-) return gashtan, bar -gardhamân ممان, hamân kill (-کشتن (-کشب koshtan, -koshluggage اسباب asbab give permission احازه دادن ؤidzé d., اجازه فرمودن o. farmûdan collect جم کردن jam' k. hag کیف kif mayel مايل willing khanevadé خانو اده khanevadé remain (ماندن (مانه mandan. manabout داجم به raje' bé gold is zar ejaze اجازه permission

§ In some Arabic words a final 3-- i is pronounced d.

تمرين

I.

ترجمه بفرمائيد:

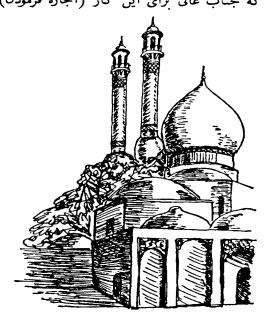
## على بابا

When Ali Baba had collected together all the gold, he wished he had brought weights and a bag with him so that he could weigh it. After he had thought about this for some time, it seemed wise to him to go to his brother-in-law's house to get some weights. Mustapha (which was his brother-in-law's name) was willing to give him the bag and the weights, and Ali went off to weigh his gold.

Some hours later, after Ali had finished the weighing of his gold, he returned to Mustapha's with his things. Although Mustapha was of the same family as Ali, he did not love him. After taking the bag from Ali, he said: "Before you go, Ali, tell me where your gold is. You seem to me to be a very rich man, since there remains some gold in this bag. All gold belongs to the king, and in spite of being ("although I be") your brother and your friend, I will tell all I know unless you show me your gold."

II. Fill in the blanks twice with the verb given in brackets, first using the formal tense (i.e. one of the Perfects) and then with the conversational tense (Present, Past, or Present Subjunctive): e.g. (تشریف بردن)

الف: بعد از اینکه آنجا تشریف برده بودید اسباب جمع کردند ب: بعد از اینکه آنجا تشریف بردید اسباب جمع کردند ۱ میخواستم دیروز بمنزل دوستم (آمدن) ولی ممکن نبود ۲ ممکن نیست که برادرم این نامه را دیروز (نوشتن)
 ۳ معلوم نبود که هواپیها زود (رسیدن)
 ۶ خواهش میکردند که ما قبل از شام (نیامدن)
 ۵ امید وار بودم که جناب عالی برای این کار (اجازه فرمودن)



### LESSON 24

Further uses of خود khod. We learned in Lesson 15a that the particle خود khod "own" and its extended personal forms خودم khodam my own, خودتان khodetân your own, etc., are used as possessive pronouns when the possessor is the same person as the subject of the verb:

I took my (own) money

پول خودم را گرفتم pûl-é khodam râ gereftam

The particle with its endings, مانْ , عانْ , عانْ , على , etc., has two other important uses. First, as a reflexive:

خودش را فریفت He deceived himself khodesh râ farîft

Don't be afraid of yourself az khodetân nàtarsîd

I am ashamed of myself az khodam khejâlat mîkasham

They said to themselves . . . békhodeshân goftand . . .

Note: -râ is never used in this construction.

Secondly, the particle is used as an emphatic word:

He said it himself and went khodesh goft o raft

As the sentence بول خودش گرفت could be read either (a) pûlé-khodesh gereft "He took his own money" or (b) pûl khodesh gereft "He took the money himself" we can put the emphatic particle first, to avoid ambiguity, thus: خودش خودش can only read khodesh pûl gereft, and must mean "He took the money himself".

In the two uses of -icklimeterise -icklimeterise and emphatic, the personal suffix -icklimeterise -i

(a) As an absolute expression, doing the same work as a verb or a whole clause:

în râ gofté o pûl dâdé raft اين را گفته و پول داده رفت Having said this, and having paid the money, he went (i.e. When he had said . . . etc.) (b) As an adjective, in the usual manner of adjectives:

روی دیوار یک ساعت بزرگ آویخته است rû-yé-dîvâr yek sâ'at-é-bozorg âvîkhté ast On the wall is hung (there hangs) a big clock

The Past Participle-adjective of the verb (-گنرن (-گنر gozashtan -gozar- to pass, to happen, is used to mean "last":

Time passes quickly vaght zûd mîgozarad وقت زود ميگذرد امه گذشته last month mâh-é-gozashté هفته گذشته last week hafté-yé-gozashté درس گذشته last lesson dars-é-gozashté درس گذشته last year sâl-é-gozashté مال گذشته and a proverb:

Bozashté ké gozashté گذشته که گذشته

lit.: Past what (is) past (i.e. Let bygones be bygones)

Must and may. We have learned how to say "can" and
"want to", using توانستن tavânestan and خواستن khâstan:

I can do this work متيوانم اين كاررا بكنم CAN mîtavânam în kârrâ bêkonam

Do you want to come tomorrow? بيائيد؟ إلى WANT TO mîkhâhîd fardâ bîâ'îd?

The verbs "must" and "may" both take the Subjunctive in the same way as do can and want to, but must and may are impersonal verbs: they change for tense, but not for person:

must, infinitive بایستن bâyestan, only has the two impersonal forms باید bâyad (Present) "it must be so" and payest (Past) "it had to be so".

may, infinitive شایست shâyestan, only has the impersonal forms شاید shâyad (Present) "it may be so" and شایست shâyest (Past) "it might be so". Examine:

(a) MUST:

I must do this bâyad în kar râ békonam باید این کار را بکنم (lit. It must be I do this)

You must come tomorrow bâyad fardâ bîâ'îd باید فردا بیائید (lit. It must be you come tomorrow)

(b) HAD TO (Past of MUST):

I had to do this bâyest în kâr râ békonam بایست این کار را بکم (lit. It had to be I do this) پایست دروز بیائید

You had to come yesterday bâyest dîrûz bîâ'îd (It had to be you come yesterday)

(c) MAY:

He may come shâyad bîâyad ه شاید بیاید (lit. It may well be he come)

I may do this shâyad în kâr râ békonam شاید این کار را بکنم (It may well be I do this)

(d) MIGHT (Past of MAY):

He might have come bâyest âmadé bâshad بایست آمده باشد v (It might be, he come)

Whether the impersonal verb is in the Present or Past form we normally use the Present Subjunctive of the verb following it, as you see from the examples above. If we use the Perfect Subjunctive of the second verb, we get the meaning "must have (done)", "may have (done)":

He must have gone bâyad rafté bâshad باید رفته باشد ا.e. Surely he has gone)

He may have gone shâyad rafté bâshad شايد رفته باشد (i.e. Probably he has gone)

Colloquial Pronunciation. Colloquial Persian pronunciation differs in some respects from elevated pronunciation, which is the pronunciation we have been using throughout this book so far. Colloquial Pronunciation is not a matter of class difference: educated and uneducated Iranians alike use both styles of pronunciation, depending on the occasion. Colloquial is that used in ordinary conversation, Elevated is that used on formal occasions, by rich and poor alike. We must also remember that Colloquial can still be polite and grammatically correct: the Polite Forms we have learnt are just as frequently pronounced colloquially as in elevated pronunciation. Colloquial uses the same grammar, the same vocabulary, the same Polite Forms, and of course is spelled like Elevated; there is only one standard Persian spelling.

The two principal things to learn are Elision and Vowel Change.

#### Elision.

(a) In Colloquial, the present stems of the verbs

نام dâdan to give گفتن goftan to say

المدن amadan to come رفتن raftan to go

tavânestan can خواستن khâstan to want to

shodan to become شدن

### are shortened thus:

-ده- -deh- becomes -d-: ميدهم mîdam I give -پوئا --gû- becomes -g-: ميگريند mîgand they say -ا- -â- becomes -: ميايم mîam I come
ا ميائيم شرائيم شرائيم mî'îm we come
ميائيم bé'îd come: ميائيم béram let me go
ميتوانيم -tavân- becomes -tûn- ميتوانيم nàmîtûnîm we can't
ميتوانيم -khâh- becomes -khâ-, and the short vowel a
disappears, thus: ميخواهم mîkhâm I want. But
ميخواهيم mîkhîm, ميخواهيم

-سو- -shav- becomes -sh-: نشوم nàsham let me not become

(b) The -- -ad ending of the 3rd Person Singular Present and Present Subjunctive becomes -é:

میکند mîkonad becomes mîkoné He does بشود béshavad becomes béshé Let him become But note these exceptions to this rule:

mîkhâd, békhâd He wants. Let him want ميخواهد بخواهد ميايد بيايد mîâd, bîâd OR ميايد بيايد mîad, bîad He comes. May he come

The same is true of the negative forms of the above.

(c) ast following a consonant is pronounced in Colloquial as  $\ell$ :

ابن است dîr é It's late bâz é باز است It's open باز است It's open باز است hast, نیست nîst, and مست ast or -st following a vowel, remain unchanged.

(d) The only Past Stem which is colloquially shortened is that of توانستن tavanestan, which, like the Present Stem (see (a) shortens  $-ava^2$ - to  $-u^2$ :

ميتوانم mîtûnam I can توانستم mîtûnestam, توانستم tûnestam I could Vowel Change.

(a) Before the nasals i n and f m, long l d becomes sometimes l, sometimes a short l, as in "pull":

تا ش or un that ميد ûmad He came ميدام mîdûnam I know تايان âghâyûn gentlemen خودتان khodetûn or khodetûn your own, yourself/ves ناندن mundan or mûndan to remain

This does not always happen. The Colloquial Pronunciation of יתלי is the same as the Elevated, tehrân. The form tehrûn is dialect.

(b) When the negative particle -: nà- precedes --- mî- it is often pronounced né:

أيكم némîkonam I'm not doing némîgé He isn't saying

but when not followed by --- mî- it remains unchanged. In all cases the -: nà- or nè- is stressed.

# تمرين

I. Write in each of two columns on the right the (i) elevated and (ii) colloquial pronunciations of the following phrases: e.g.

Persian نمیگوید	Elevated nàmîgûyad	Colloquial nėmîgė	
آنجا ميروم .1	2. ئ	میتوان	
زود میاید .3	باشد . 4		
ثميدانستم .5	نكند .6		
چه میگوئید؟ .7	بنده باید بروم .8		
میکنند .9	كارتان آسان است .10		

## II. Translate:

- 1. I can speak Persian well.
- 2. I want to speak Persian well.
- 3. I must speak Persian well.
- 4. I may speak Persian well.
- 5. I had to speak Persian well.
- 6. I wanted to speak Persian well.
- 7. I could speak Persian well.
- 8. I might speak Persian well.
- 9. I must have spoken Persian well.
- 10. I may have spoken Persian well.

#### III. Translate:

۱ این مرد خودش یا کشت ۲ خودتان فارسی به میکنید؟ ۳ باید خودمان آن را درست کنیم ۶ شاید خودشان رفته باشند ۵ خودتان را نفر بسد

#### LESSON 24a

The following conjunctions usually take the verb following them in the Subjunctive:

magar înké unless مگر اینکه

با اینکه bâ înkê although با وجود اینکه bâ vojûd-ê-înkê although با اینکه مگر اینکه بمن حقیقت را بگوئید بشیا کمک نمیکنم

magar înké béman haghîghat râ bégûîd béshomâ komak némîkonam

Unless you tell me the truth I shan't help you

ا با اینکه این اسب خوب باشد من نمیتوانم سوار آن بشوم bâ înké în asb khûb bâshad man némîtavânam savâr-é-ân béshavam

Although this horse is (" be ") good, I can't ride him bâvojûd-é-înké în mâshîn âlî bâshad némîtavânam ânrâ békharam

Although this car is (" be ") excellent, I can't buy it

The following conjunctions take either the Subjunctive or some other tense, depending on certain circumstances:

agar if تا agar if اگر so that/until اگر barâyé înké so that/because

اگر agar "if" takes the Subjunctive after it if the verb is in the present or future time (i.e. if the condition is a possible one):

اگر زود بیاید اتوبوس میگیرد – اگرنه نمیگیرد agar zûd bîyâyad otôbûs mîgîrad — agarnà, némîgîrad If he comes soon, he'll catch the bus—if not, he won't

In this example, he may yet come in time: it is still a possibility.

But if the verb following the 'if is a Past verb (of any tense), then obviously the condition is impossible. In this case:

# ه اگر زودتر میامد اتوبوس را میگرفت agar zûdtar mîâmad otôbûsrâ mîgereft

If he had come sooner he would have caught the bus we use the IMPERFECT (the Past with -mi- prefixed) in both parts of the sentence.

it usually takes the Subjunctive), and (ii) until, when it

takes the Subjunctive when referring to the future, and the Past Tense when referring to the past:

أينجا صبر كنيد تا من بيام Wait here until I come

inja sabr kard ta man amadam اینجا صبر کرد تا من آمدم

He waited here till I came

The conjunction of vaghtîké "when" (see Lesson 21a, Relative expressions) takes the Past Tense when we wish to translate an English Perfect Tense:

vaghtîkê âmad înrâ besh bédîd وقتی که آمد این را بش بدهید
When he has come, give him this

راى اين كه مراى اين كه barâyê înkê, when it means "so that", "in order that", takes the Subjunctive. It can also mean "because", in which case it takes some non-Subjunctive tense. Compare:

SO THAT . . .

ا خوب كار كنيد براى اينكه موفق باشيد khûb kâr konîd barâyê înkê movaffagh bâshîd Work hard so that you may be successful

with

BECAUSE ...

... موفق بودم براى این که خوب کار کردم ۲ movaffagh bûdam barâyê înkê khûb kâr kardam I was successful because I (had) worked hard

No. 1 uses the Subjunctive, No. 7 uses some other tense, in this case the Past. No. 1 expresses a hypothesis, No. 7 a fact.

The Passive. In English the Passive of verbs is formed

ا با اینکه این اسب خوب باشد من نمیتوانم سوار آن بشوم bâ înké în asb khûb bâshad man némîtavânam savâr-é-ân béshavam

Although this horse is (" be ") good, I can't ride him bâvojûd-é-înké în mâshîn âlî bâshad némîtavânam ânrâ békharam

Although this car is (" be") excellent, I can't buy it

The following conjunctions take either the Subjunctive or some other tense, depending on certain circumstances:

agar if تا agar if اگر so that/until اگر barâyé înké so that/because

اگر agar "if" takes the Subjunctive after it if the verb is in the present or future time (i.e. if the condition is a possible one):

اگر زود بیاید اتوبوس میگیرد – اگرنه نمیگیرد agar zûd bîyâyad otôbûs mîgîrad — agarnà, némîgîrad If he comes soon, he'll catch the bus—if not, he won't

In this example, he may yet come in time: it is still a possibility.

But if the verb following the If is a Past verb (of any tense), then obviously the condition is impossible. In this case:

# ه اگر زودتر میامد اتوبوس را میگرفت agar zûdtar mîâmad otôbûsrâ mîgereft

If he had come sooner he would have caught the bus we use the IMPERFECT (the Past with - mî- prefixed) in both parts of the sentence.

it usually takes the Subjunctive), and (ii) until, when it

takes the Subjunctive when referring to the future, and the Past Tense when referring to the past:

أينجا صبر كنيد تا من بيام Mait here until I come

أينجا صبر كرد تا من آمدم Me waited here till I came

The conjunction vaghtîké "when" (see Lesson 21a, Relative expressions) takes the Past Tense when we wish to translate an English Perfect Tense:

vaghtîké âmad înrâ besh bédîd وقتی که آمد این را بش بدهید
When he has come, give him this

رای این که barâye înke, when it means "so that", "in order that", takes the Subjunctive. It can also mean "because", in which case it takes some non-Subjunctive tense. Compare:

SO THAT . . .

ا خوب كار كنيد براى اينكه موفق باشيد khûb kâr konîd barâyê înkê movaffagh bâshîd Work hard so that you may be successful

with

BECAUSE ...

... موفق بودم براى این که خوب کار کردم... movaffagh bûdam barâyê înkê khûb kâr kardam I was successful because I (had) worked hard

No. 1 uses the Subjunctive, No. 7 uses some other tense, in this case the Past. No. 1 expresses a hypothesis, No. 7 a fact.

The Passive. In English the Passive of verbs is formed

by using the past participle of the verb with the auxiliary "to be" in the appropriate tense:

I see becomes I am seen
I saw becomes I was seen, etc.

In Persian the same rule applies, but the auxiliary used is (-شون shodan, -shav-" to become", Not ثنون " to be", which, you will remember, forms Perfect tenses, not Passives.

In Persian the Past Participle precedes the auxiliary, in the Passive as in the Perfects which you have already studied:

I see ميين mîbînam becomes I am seen ديده ميشوم dîdê mîshavam

I saw دیده شدم dîdam becomes I was seen دیده شدم dîdê shodam
I have seen دیده شده ام dîdê am—I have been seen دیده شده ام dîdê shodê am

let me see ببينم bébînam—let me be seen ديده بشوم dîdé béshavam OR ديده شوم dîdé shavam

let me not see نبين nàbînam—let me not be seen dîdê nàshavam

(Note: in the Passive, the negative is attached to the auxiliary, not, as is usually the case, to the participle.)

We use the Passive far less in Persian than we do in English.

Passive of Compound Verbs. (a) Verbs compounded with كودن kardan, and a few others, drop their verbal element and use شدن shodan instead, to give the Passive: satisfy راضي شدن râzî k. be satisfied راضي شدن مودن râzî sh. fill وفي مورد شدن por sh.

empty خالی کردن khâlî k. be emptied خالی شدن khâlî sh. open باز کردن bâz k. be opened باز شدن bâz sh. extend (a thing) איי אני pahn k. be extended איי אני pahn sh. find ييدا كردن pêidâ k. be found ييدا شدن pêidâ sh. arrange درست شدن dorost k. be arranged درست کردن dorost sh. prepare حاضر شدن hâzer k. be made ready حاضر کردن hâzer sh. send ارسال داشتن ersal d. ersâl sh ارسال شدن

(b) A few verbs compounded with داشتن dâshtan this verbal element to یافتن yâftan (" to find ") to form their Passives:

يرورش يافتن parvaresh d. be educated يرورش داشتن educate p. yâftan

anjâm d.

انجام یافتن be accomplished انجام داشتن accomplish anjâm yâftan

(c) Verbs compounded with most other verbal elements put that element into the Past Participle and add the shodan in the normal شدن way:

It shows نشان ميدهد neshân mîdê It is shown نشان داده میشود neshân dâdé mîshavad He took it away آزا ور داشت anrâ var dâsht var dâshté shod ور داشته شد var dâshté shod With the Passive, "by " = az. این از کی بیدا شد؟ ؟ By whom was this found în az kî pêidâ shod?

In English, we have a curious habit of forming passives from verbs which have no Direct Object: I was given (i.e. to me, Indirect Object, was given . . . ). This is not possible in Persian. The passive equivalents of such verbs which take Indirect Objects, as, for example, گفتن to say, command, دادن give, فرمودن sell, مسيدن ask, etc., can only be formed thus:

I was given

| EITHER (a) They gave to me ... béman dâdand or si cleo me ... béman dâdand or si cleo me ... من داده شد ... béman dâdé shod or si cleo me was given ... béman dâdé shod or si cleo me ... béman mîgûyand or si cleo me it is said ... béman gofté mîshavad or si cleo me it is said ... az mâ porsîdand از ما رسيدند or si cleo me us ... az mâ porsîdand از ما رسيدند or si cleo me us it was asked ... az mâ porsîdé shod از ما رسيده شد az mâ porsîdé shod از ما رسيده شد az mâ porsîdé shod

Numbers. Here are the remaining numbers:

	Cardinal	Ordinal
21	: bîst o بیست و یک ۲۱	yek بیست و یکم bîst o yekom
<b>22</b>	bîst o بیست و دو	
<b>23</b>	. bîst o بیست و سه ۲۳	bîst o sevvom بیست و سوم
24	. bîst o بیست و چهار ۲۴	chahâr (etc.)
<b>25</b>	bîst o بیست و پنج ۲۵	panj Cardinal
<b>26</b>	bîst o s بیست و شش ۲۶	hesh 27 ۲۷ بیست و هفت bîst o haft
<b>28</b>	bîst o l بیست و هشت ۲۸	bîst o noḥ بيست و نه عوم عوم
<b>30</b>	۶î سى ۲۰	sî o yek سی و یک ما ۳۱
40	chehel جهل	<i>panjâḥ</i> پنجاه
60	shast شصت	<i>haftâd</i> هفتاد <i>haftâd</i>
80	۱۸۰ مشتاد hashtâ	d 90 ٩٠ نود <i>navad</i>

```
sad صد و پنجاه و یک ۱۵۱ 151
100 1 . .
              sad صد
                                 o panjâh o yek
            devîst دو ست
200 Y · •
           sîsad سىصد
                         chahâr sad جهارصد
300 * • •
            shesh sad شش صد ۶۰۰ 600 pânsad پانصد
500 5 . .
                           hasht sad هشت صد ۸۰۰۰
           haft sad هفت صد
700 v·•
             noh sad نه صد
                          hezâr هزار hezâr
900 4 . .
1969 (year or numeral) 1959
                               هزار و نه صد و شعت و نه
                            hezâr o noh sad o shast o noh
dô hezâr دو هزار ۲۰۰۰ مورو
sé hezâr سه هزار ۴۰۰۰ sé hezâr
```

panjâh dar sad ينجاه در صد ه./ % nesf 50 نصف بلا أ

melyûn مليون ، ، ، ، ، ، ، ، ، ، ، 1,000,000

sad dar sad صد در صد ۱۵۰۰٪ %100

You will notice (a) Numbers from 21 to 29, 31 to 39, 41 to 49, etc., are formed by coupling the larger number (tens) to the smaller number (units) with o "and". (b) All compound numbers are formed in this way, right into the millions. (c) The tens, 30 to 90, are simple numerals, and irregularly formed. The only difference between of 3 and of 30 is the vowel. (d) 200, 300, and 500 have special words, and of a couple of sisal, and of pânsal. Otherwise the hundreds are regularly compounded. (e) The Arabic word for "first", of avval, is not used for 21st, 31st, 101st, etc.—these are regularly formed by suffixing of the Cardinal number at the end of the compound.

When constructing any number, always work from greatest to smallest, and always connect separate elements with  $\rho$  which is pronounced  $\rho$ .

## فرهنگئ

to dance رقص کردن raghs k.
excellent عال 'âlî'
understand فهميدن fahmîdan,
-fahmbridge بل pol
hungry گرسنه gorosnê
also, as well گرسنه hamchonîn
as far as (preposition) له tâ
be lost عام شدن gom sh.
tooth مندن dandân
already م شدن mesl-êanimal عبوانا hêivân, Arabic
plural حيوانات hêivânât

pass (by or over) (-گذر (قان ) gozashtan, -gozar- (az) to play بازی کردن bâzî k. truth حقیقت haghîghat heart معلی ag happy خوشحال ostokhân lose استخوان ostokhân lose کم کردن gom k. slowly, gently مسته dhestê cast one's eyes نظر . . . انداختن nazar . . . andâkhtan alone تنها tanhâ

## بخوانيد:

## سگ گرسنه و استخوان

یکروز سگی گرسنه خوشحال بود که استخوانی بزرگ پیدا کرده بود. سگ استخوان را به دندان گرفت تا آبرا تنها بخورد بدون اینکه حیوانات دیگر ببیند. از آنجا تا منزل بایست از پلی که زیر آن رود خانه ای بود بگذرد. وقتیکه به پل رسید براست و چپ خوب نگاه کرد چون نمیخواست هیچکس آبراببیند. در حالیکه آهسته از روی پل میگذشت نظر بپائین انداخت و دید یک سگ مثل خودش یک استخوان بزرگ در دهان دارد. سگ بی فهم نفهمید این استخوانی که در آب رود خانه دیده میشود مال خودش است و از ته دل میل داشت باشد.

ولی همینکه دهان باز کرد تا آن استخوانی را که در آب دیده میشد بدندان گیرد استخوان در آب افتاد و گم شد – و مجای اینکه استخوانی دیگر پیدا کرده باشد آن یکی را هم که خود داشت – گم کرد.

## تمويوم

- I. Translate the last paragraph of the text (beginning . (ولی وقتیکه دندانهای خودش باز کرد . . .
- II. Put the bracketed verb into the sentence in the right form:

ع اگر سک دندانهای خودش (بازکردن) استخوان میافتد

۵ اگر پول زیاد نداشته باشید بهتر است چیز ارزانتری (خریدن)

ایلیاتی از یکی از ایلات جنوبی، ایران îlîyâtî-az-yekî az îlât-é-jonûbî-yê îrân Tribesman from one of the southern tribes of Iran.



## LESSON 25

The Short Infinitive. We have learnt that the infinitive of Persian verbs is that form ending in --tan or --دن -dan:

لان kardan to do

rîkhtan to pour

shekastan to break خوردن shekastan to break شكستن

There exists also a second, shorter infinitive, which is

formed in the same way as the Past Stem of the verb, by dropping the final  $\dot{\upsilon}$ -an of the infinitive proper. There are no irregularly formed Short Infinitives. Thus:

shekast, خورد shekast, خورد shekast, خورد khord ثکست khord خورد The Short Infinitive is used in these impersonal expressions:

(i) After نباید bâyad one must, نباید nàbâyad one must not, bâyest باید one had to, and بایست nàbâyest one had not to:

One must not do this thing نباید این کار را کرد ۱ nàbâyad în kâr râ kard

One must say that . . . . . . ۲ باید گفت که *bâyad goft ké* . . .

One had to work well for that employer
م بایست برای آن کارفرما خوب کار کرد
bâyest barâ-yé-ân kâr farmâ khûb kâr kard
One had not to tell lies نبایست دروغ گفت
nàbâyest dorûgh goft (i.e. it was necessary not to . . . )

(ii) After the verb ميشود mîshavad or mîshé meaning, here, "it is possible to . . . ". This construction is only common in the Present:

ه میشود گفت بفارسی سلام علیم؟ mîsharad goft béfârsî salâm 'alêikom?

Can one say (Is it possible to say) "Salaam aleikum" in Persian ? بله ميشود balé mîshavad—Yes, one can.

And similarly after ميشود nàmîshavad one can't, it is not possible to . . . :

میشود در مسجد کفش پوشید میشود در مسجد کفش پوشید nàmîshavad dar masjed kafsh pûshîd
One cannot wear shoe(s) in the mosque

(c) After the forms ميتوان mîtavân, ميتوان nàmîtavân, ميتوانست mîtavânest, and ميتوانست nàmîtavânest (one can, one cannot, one could not):

(N.B.—There is no personal ending at all on this form.)

az înjâ mîtavân masjed-é-shâh râ dîd One can see the Masjed-é-Shah from here

ولى مسجد جامع را نميتوان ديد مسجد عامع را نميتوان ديد valî masjed-é-jâme' râ nàmîtavân dîd
But one cannot see the Friday Mosque

There is no shortened Colloquial pronunciation for these forms of توانستن tavânestan when they are used in these impersonal expressions with the Short Infinitive.

The Short Infinitive is also used after a special form of the verb خواستن khâstan to wish:

Take the verb خواستن khâstan and conjugate it in the Present Tense, DROPPING THE - mî- PREFIX. We get:

(1)	خواهم	khâham	خواهيم	khâhîm
<b>(2)</b>	خواهيد	khâhîd	خواهيد	khâhîd
(3)	خواهد	khâhad	خواهند	khâhand
(3)	خواهد	khâhad	خواهد	khâhad

Add to each of these forms the Short Infinitive of a verb, and we have a Future Tense. Thus, for كردن to do and كفتن to say:

خواستن About this tense: (a) Do not confuse it with khâstan with - mî- prefixed in the Present, used with the Subjunctive of the verb, giving the meaning "I wish to do something ". Compare:

میخواهم این را بکنم with این را خواهم کرد میخواهم این را بکنم with میخواهم این را بکنم nrâ khâham kard (Future) mîkhâham înrâ békonam I shall do this

I want to do this

(b) In this future tense, the stress is always on the operative part of the verb which is the Short Infinitivethe auxiliary is only lightly pronounced:

نواهم رفت khâham ràft I shall go .

(c) This Future Tense is only, or almost only, used in formal speech and in writing. In conversation we normally use the Present Tense for future time, unless there is a risk of ambiguity, for example:

Whenever it is perfectly obvious that the action is a future one, we use the Present:

فردا میر وم Tomorrow I'll go fardâ mîravam

- (d) There is no special Colloquial pronunciation for خواستن khâstan when it is used in this construction.
- (e) The negative prefix -: nà- is attached to the auxiliary, not to the Short Infinitive:

I shall not say nàkhâham goft نخواهم تگفت He will not come nàkhâhad âmad نخواهد آمد

When, therefore, is the long infinitive, the infinitive given in all the dictionaries, used? Its sole use in sentences is (see Lesson 22a) as a noun, i.e. as the subject of a verb:

۱۲ پختن تخم مرغ آسان است pokhtan-é-tokhm-é-morgh âsân é Cooking (to cook) eggs is easy or as the object of a verb:

من راديو شنيدن را دوست دارم man râdiô shenîdan-râ dûst dâram I like listening (to listen) to the radio or governed by a preposition:

> رای خواندن وقت ندار م barâyê khândan vaght nàdâram I have no time for reading (for to-read)

Thou. Up to now we have constantly used one pronoun

for you, شا shomâ. Strictly speaking, this is the plural form of you. There is also a singular form

with its secondary forms بتو bė-to to thee,  $\vec{z}$  tord (no ) thee, direct object—and so forth.

This form of you is only used as is "tu" in French or Italian, or "du" in German, i.e. to one person with whom one is on very familiar terms indeed. It even happens that father and son will address each other as shoma. In some cases the use of it implies a familiarity almost verging on contempt. The foreigner is well advised never to use it; but it should be known, as it is sometimes heard, and is used in literature. The verb with it o as its subject is the same as the shoma form in all tenses, but with the final --d taken off:

شها ئيد	توئی	شہا رفتید	تورفتي
shomâ îd	to î	shomâ raftîd	to raftî
you are	thou art	you went	thou didst go
شہا دارید	تو داری	ديده باشيد	دیده باشی
shomâ dârîd	to dârî	dîdê bâshîd	dîdé bâshî
you have	thou hast	you may have	thou mayest
		seen	have seen

But for the *imperative* we drop the 4--2d of the shomâ imperative form:

بيائيد	بيا	ننويسيد	ننويس
bî â' î $d$	bîâ	nànevîsîd	nànevîs
(you) come	(thou) come	don't (you)	don't (thou)
		write	write

The corresponding possessive suffix is --at (this is the original singular of --etân):

منزلتان	منزلت	پدرتان	پدرت
manzeletân	manzelat	pedaretân	pedarat
your house	thy house	your father	thy father
دوستهايتان	دوستهايت	خودتان	خودت
dûsthâyetân	dûsthâya <b>t</b>	khodetân	khodat
your friends	thy friends	your own,	thy own,
		yourself/ves	thyself

Colloquial Pronunciation. In the Subjunctive and Imperative of some verbs, the -i  $b\acute{e}$ - becomes bo- when the next pronounced vowel is o,  $\delta$ , or  $\hat{a}$ :

because the next begûd pronounced vowel a pronounced vowel from المقتى begûd begam begam begam begam begam begam begam begam begam المشتن begozar المشتن begozarîd المشتن begozarîd بكذريد begozarand begozarand to pass

And note especially the pronunciation of the right to imperative in:

BUT

In both Elevated and Colloquial the following pronunciations are the only possible ones:

Irregular Present Stems—Group 6, åsh-år.

Verbs whose infinitive ends in اشتن - âshtan have Present Stems in -ار- âr-. There are no exceptions to this rule.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Stem.
dâshtan داشتن	have	- <i>dâr</i> دار
angâshtan انگاشتن	consider, suppose	- angârانگار
pendâshtan پنداشتن	consider, reflect	- <i>pendâr</i> پندار
kâshtan کاشتن	sow, cultivate	- کار کار
gomâshtan گہاشتن	appoint, set over	-gomâr گهاد-
گذاشتن gozáshtan § (کذاردن gozárdan also)	place, set	گذار گذار

§ Distinguish between (-گذر- گذر-) گذشتن gozashtan, -gozar- meaning to pass by (short a, no Direct Object) and its derivative given above (-گذار- گذاشتن وozashtan, -gozar- meaning to place (long ! a, takes a Direct Object).

## تمرين

I. Put the bracketed verbs into the Future Tense:

٤ مميدانند آيا ايشان (تشريف آوردن) يا نه ۵ او زود باصفهان (رفتن)

II. Put into the singular (تو) form:

٣ خودتان ۲ دستتان ۱ بودید ع نروید ¿ (imperative) بگوئید! ۵ بروید imperative) رود باشید! ۸ (imperative) نکنید! ۹ چه میگوئید؟ ٠١ ميخواهيد

III. Write the pronunciation, thus:

Orthography Elevated Colloquial e.g. بگریم bégûyam bégam ۲ نمیتوانم ۳ بگذاریم ۱ بکن ۽ بگهند

ترحمه بفرمائيد:

## IV. Translate:

- 1. One must not talk in the mosque.
- 2. One can always try; but one cannot always say whether one will succeed.
- 3. It is not possible to say who did this.
- 4. One shouldn't tell lies.
- 5. What must one say instead of "من "? One must ." ننده " sav

#### TEST PAPER—VERBS

A. 1. Give the Past Participles of:

۵ گذشتن ۲ بافتن ۳ کردن ۶ شدن

2. Give the Present Participles of:

Give the Present Participles of : ۱ رفتن ۲ گفتن ۳ آمدن ۶ آموختن ۵ زدن

3. Give the Short Infinitives of:

۱ رفتن ۲ بودن ۳ افزودن ۶ فرمودن ۵ خواهش کردن

4. Conjugate completely in the Present Tense:

۱ نمودن ۲ آمیختن ۳ نشستن ۶ داشتن ۵ بستن

5. Put these forms into the Past Tense:

۱ میخرم ۲ نمیروید ۳ کیست؟ ۶ میتابد ۵ میامیزد

6. Give the (a) Perfect, (b) Pluperfect, and (c) Perfect Subjunctives of these forms:

۱ کردم ۲ گرفتم ۳ خواندم ٤ شمردم ۵ پختم

B. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb given in the column on the left:

آمدن اینجا صرکنید تا من --حسن میخواهد فردا بتهران ---رفتن ٣ كدام يكي از شيا خواهد ---؟ خواندن در تهران پایتخت ایران امروز زیاد دکانها ---بودن گفتن - بودن نباید — که او دزد — رسيدن از این کوچه میتوانم بخیابان اصفهان ---؟ نيامدن ٧ چه گفت؟ گفت که چرا شیا دروز --؟ حس کردن در دست چپ نمیتوانم هینچ چیز --آن شخص گفت که از آینجا نمیشود -بىرون شدن ١٠ اگ فدا - نامه - اگنه نه نوشتن - رسدن

C. Give the (a) Short Infinitive, (b) Full Infinitive, (c) 3rd person singular Subjunctive, (d) 3rd person singular Imperfect, and (e) 3rd person singular Present Tense of the Persian verb meaning

to tell lies

Put the form (a), (b), (c), (d), or (e) as appropriate into each of the blanks in the following sentences:

این شخص را دوست ندارم برای اینکه همیشه ....

۲ همیشه - و باین سبب هیچ کس او را قبول نمیکرد.

٣ --- بد است.

۽ نميشود ---.

۵ اگر کسی --- هیچ کس او را قبول نخواهد کرد.

D. Distinguish, by translating or explaining, between:

خواهیم دید میخواهیم ببینیم	}	۲	تا آمدم تا بیایم	}	١
باید عرض کم باید گف <i>ت</i>	}	ŧ	اگر بر ود اگرمیر فت		٣
گم کرد گم شد	}	P	شاید اشتباه کنم شاید اشتباه کرده باشم	}	۵
نکن نکی	}	٨	دیده ام دیده میشوم	}	٧
گذشته گذاشته	}	١.	نمیتوانستند بیایند نمیتوانست آمد	}	4

## PART THREE

Words

لغات

#### LESSON 26

Word-building. By the use of suffixes we can form many derivative words in Persian:

(a) If we take the Present Stem of some verbs and add the suffix --esh (عثر --yesh after vowels), we form abstract nouns of quality or of activity:

sar head سر زنش sarzanesh سر زنش sarzanesh ردن (-زن-) عمل zadan, -zan- beat = punishment کوشیدن (-کوش-) kûshîdan, -kûsh- to strive :

küshesh effort کوشش

(-ورز-) varzîdan, -varz- to exercise :

varzesh sport, exercise ورزش

Similarly, from obvious sources, آميزش âmîzesh mixture; مايش âmûzesh learning, knowledge; مايش namâyesh exhibition, show; مايش dânesh knowledge; آزمايش âzmâyesh experiment, test; and many others.

(b) If we add to any adjective (including participles) ending in  $\bullet$ -- $\ell$  the suffix  $\mathcal{F}$ -- $g\hat{\imath}$ , we get the abstract noun of the activity concerned:

رانندگی rânandégî (noun) رانندگی rânandégî (noun) رانند khasté tired خستگی khastégî fatigue خسته basté bound بستگی bastégî bond, link, connexion گرسنگی gorosné hungry گرسنگی

(c) Many words of activity are formed by coupling together the Past and Present Stems of a verb, or two Past Stems:

from گفت و کو) گفتگو goftan: گفتن goftogû quarrel jostoju search : جستبو jostoju search amadoshod traffic آمدوشد amadoshod traffic

(d) If we add the suffix -بان -ban (rarely, وان -van) to a noun, we get the name of the person tending the place or thing:

باغ bâgh garden : باغبان bâghbân gardener

shotorbân شتر بان shotorbân شتر ان shotorvân د شتر ان

در dar door : دربان darban concierge, janitor

پاس pâs watch: پاسبان pâsbân watchman, policeman

(e) The suffix -stân, -estân, means "place of":

ی golestân rose-bower گلستان: golestân rose englestân England انگلستان

lehestân Poland لبستان

shahr city: شهرستان shahrestan a county hendûstân India مناوستان pâkestân Pakistan ياكستان afghanestan Afghanistan افغانستان

torkestân Turkestan تركستان arabestân Arabia عربستان

- (f) The suffix "--gâh also means" place": lîstgâh station دانشگاه dâneshgâh university foradgah airport فرودگاه namayeshgah theatre مایشگاه bâshgâh club باشگاه dzmâyeshgâh laboratory آزمایشگاه bongah society, office بنگاه
- (g) The word خانه khânê "house" is used as a suffix, for a place where things are kept or where a certain activity is pursued:

كتابخانه ketâbkhâné library كارخانه kârkhâné workshop كتابخانه ashpazkhâné kitchen مريضخانه marîzkhâné hospital آشپزخانه meḥmânkhâné hôtel

(h) A few abstract nouns of quality or condition are made by adding the suffix  $-\hat{a}r$ :

from رفتار raftan: رفتار raftâr behaviour from رفتار gereftan: گرفتار gereftâr affliction from گفتار goftân: گفتار goftâr speech, talk from کردن kardan: کردار kerdâr action (vowel change here)

(j) We can add, to adjectives of quality, the suffix  $1-\hat{a}$  to give the abstract quality, a noun:

ېن paḥn wide, broad ېن paḥnâ width, breadth گرم garm warm گرم garmâ warmth

(k) Many abstract nouns are also formed by adding د- -3 (غ- 'f after vowels) to other words:

آشپزی Ashpaz a cook آشپزی Ashpazî cuisine آشپزی bâghbân gardener باغبان bâghbânî gardening باغبان naghghâshî painting نقاشی aânâ wise آشپزی dânâ'î wisdom

دانانی dând wise دانانی dând'î wisdom دانانی bozorg great بزرگی bozorgî greatness

And, from equally obvious sources:

زیباشناسی zîbâshendsî aesthetics زیباشناسی kâshîkârî tilework, mosaic کاشیکاری nâmnevîsî registration نامنویسی vaznkashî weighing

(l) Finally, for this lesson at least, a colloquial suffix denoting the operator or handler of something. This suffix -chi is taken from the Turkish -ci or ci:

تلفنچى telefonchî telephone operator نفتچى naftchî oil-seller تفنگئ tofangchî rifleman (تفنگچى tofangchî rifle

Colloquial Pronunciation. In the verb (-گذافتن وozâshtan, -gozâr- "to place", it is common practice to omit in speech the syllable -go- only when it is preceded by a prefix:

سيگذاريد mîzâram I put اينجا بگذاريد injâ bézârîd Put it here.

? Where did you put it أرا كجا گذاشتيد؟

## تمرين

#### I. Form workers from:

۱ باغ ۲ در ۳ پاس

places from:

ع کل ه عرب ۶ مهان ۷ بودن ۸ دانش abstracts of activity from :

۱۰ آشپز ۱۰ باغبان ۱۲ راندن ۱۲ بستن and redoubled compounds from:

۱۲ جستن ۱۶ گفتن

II. Translate and explain the construction of:

ا بستگی ۲ دانشگاه ۳ نقاشی کردن ۶ نمایش ه نامنویسی شدن

## III. Translate:

- 1. to do the cooking.
- 2. to be painted.
- 3. a quarrel, to quarrel. There was (= نين a quarrel between them.

- 4. the policeman, the police, traffic.
- 5. theatre, library, county.



#### LESSON 26a

Wordbuilding. We form CAUSATIVE VERBS in Persian thus:

(a) By taking the Present Stem and adding الندن - andan or اندن - andan to make the new verb, which is then regular: رفانه کردن روانه کردن raftan, -rav- to go; روانه کردن ravanék, راندن -ravan- (also راندن -ravan- روانه -ravan- روانه -ravan- دروانه -ravan- راندن randan, -روانه -ravan- دروانه -ravan- دروانه -ravan- راندن -ravan- دروانه -ravan- دروان

-رسان- rasîdan, -ras- to arrive; رساندن rasândan, -رسان- -rasân- or رسانیدن -رسانیدن -رسانیدن -رسانیدن -to bring it up.

گردیدن gashtan, -گرد- -gard- (also گشتن gashtan, -گرد- -gard-) to become ; گردانیدن - گردانیدن gardânîdan, -gardân- to make something become so.

-سوزت sûkhtan, -sûz- to blaze, be on fire; سوختن سوزاندن سوزانيدن سوزانيدن

- - گذردن گذردن گذردن گذردن گذردن گذردن گذردن گذردن گذاردن -

Note: گذردن - گذر gozardan, -gozar- also forms the Causative گذراند و gozarândan, -gozarân- (by rule (i) above), meaning to spend or pass time.

In each of the cases above, the original verb does not take an object, but itself performs the action of the verb. The Causative derivative takes an object and causes it to do the action. Examine:

کاغذ سوخت kâghaz sûkht The paper burned کاغذ را سوزانیدم kâghaz râ sûzânîdam I burned the paper

Time. The hour is given with the word - sa'at meaning (1) hour (as here) and (2) clock or watch:

one o'clock sâ'at-é-yek ماعت یک three o'clock sâ'at-é-sé ساعت ساعت یازده eleven o'clock sâ'at-é-yâzdaḥ ساعت یازده

Time up to the half hour is given by adding the minutes to the last hour, using pronounced o:

- ماعت یک و ده دقیقه 1.10 sđ'at-é-yek o daḥ daghîghé
- عاعت دو و ربع '2.15 sâ'at-é-do o rob'
- ماعت سه و بیست و پنج دقیقه 3.25 sá'at-é-sé o bîstopanj daghîghé
- ماعت چهار و نیم 4.30 sa'at-é-chahâr o nîm

## فرهنگئ - وقت

hour, clock, watch, ساعت sd'at
half an hour نيم ساعت nîmsd'at
quarter of an hour نيم ساعت rob'
sd'at
a.m. مبيح sobh
noon منبو zohr
forenoon قبل از ظهر ghabl az zohr
sunset غروب ghorûb
year ساد sdl
week منه hafte

minute دقیقه daghighé
half نیم nim
quarter بهد از طهر
p.m. بعد از طهر ba'ad az zohr
midnight بعد از طهر
mesf-e-shab
sunrise نصن شب tolu'
second (of time) ثانیه saniye
month ماه mah
day روز به

Days of the Week. Iran is a Moslem country and the weekly day of rest is Friday. The day after that, Saturday, is called after the Jewish Sabbath. From then on the days are numbered in order after Saturday:

Saturday شنبه shambé (-نب- = mb) Šunday يكشنبه yekshambé

Monday دوشنیه doshambé

séshambé سهشنبه

wednesday جہارشنبه chahârshambé

Thursday پنجشنبه panjshambé

Friday جمه jom'é or آدینه adîné (less commonly)
To all these names we may prefix روز rûz-é- (day).

The Calendar, تقوع taghvîm.

Three calendars are known in Iran:

- (a) The Arab (Moslem) lunar calendar, 354-5 days long, is only used to mark religious occasions. It is not necessary for us to learn it, merely to know it exists.
- (b) The Iranian national calendar is solar and lasts 365-6 days. It begins exactly on the Spring Equinox which,

depending on the year, falls on our 20th, 21st, or 22nd March:

بار. <i>bahâr</i> Spring	farvardîn فروردین farvardîn اردی بهشت each each خرداد	1 7 7
تابستان <i>tâbestân</i> Summer	tîr تیر tîr مرداد mordâd وach همرواد shaḥrîvar	t d F
پائيز p <i>đ'îz</i> Autumn	$\left\{egin{array}{l} 30 \; { m days} \\ { m each} \end{array} ight.$ جان $\left\{egin{array}{l} ab  \hat{a}n, \\ \ddot{a}zar \end{array} ight.$ آذر	۷ ۸
زمستان zemestân Winter	$\left\{ egin{array}{ll} 30 \  ext{days} \end{array}  ight. \left. egin{array}{ll} d\hat{e}i \  ext{each} \end{array}  ight. \left. egin{array}{ll} ba\underline{h}man \  ext{29/30 days} \end{array}  ight. \left. egin{array}{ll} esfand \end{array}  ight.$	11

esfand اسفند has 30 days every fourth (leap) year (مال كبيسه sâl-e-kabîse). To each of these names we can suffix ماه "month". This is especially common in the case of the short names: ترماه tîrmâḥ, ميراه meḥrmâḥ.

Both the Moslem and the Iranian years are reckoned from the date of the Prophet's journey from Mecca to Medina in 622 A.D., but because the solar year is longer than the lunar year, the number of the year (and of course the names of the months) differ.

- 1 Aug. 1968 A.D. = ۱۳۶۷ مرداد ۱۰ 10 mordâd 1347 A.H. Iranian (A.H. = anno hegirae, Year of the Flight)
- (c) The Christian Calendar is used unofficially, especially in commerce and international affairs. The months are mostly pronounced as in French and transliterated so:

French.	Persian.	French.	Persian
juillet	ژ و يه	<b>j</b> anvie <b>r</b>	ژانویه
août	(ût) اوت	février	فوريه
septembre	سپتامبر	mars	مارس
octobre	أكتبر	avril	آو ريل
novembre	نوامبر	mai	مه
décembre	دسامىر	juin	ژ وئن

Dates are given with Ordinal numbers and the ezâfé: Saturday 16th Khordâd shambé shânzdahòm-é-khordâd شنبه شازدهم خرداد

1st March avval-é-mars اول مارس or اول مارس or روز اول مارس rûz-é-avval-é-mars

The year is quoted as a number, beginning with the thousand: 1914 ۱۹۱٤ مزار و نهصد و چهارده hezâr o noḥsad o chahârdaḥ.

## فرهنگئ

holiday عيد 'éid sun غورشيد 'éid افتاب khorshîd New Year's Day (1st Farvardin) ميد نوروز Moslem مسلمان mosalmân Christian مسلمان 'savî solar (Iranian) year سال sdl-é-khorshidi خورشیدی zardoshil Zoroastrian زردشی zardoshil Jew(ish) یبودی yahudi Jesus § عیسی fsd, خضرت عیسی hazrat-é-'isd

§ حضرت hazrat = Lord; Christ is honoured as a prophet by Moslems. Similarly: حضرت پيغامبر hazrat-é-péighâmbar the Lord Prophet (i.e. Mahomet محمد mohammad).

card کارت kârt
sweets شیرینی shîrînî
send (-فرستادن (-فرست) ferestâdan,
-ferestcongratulate, send best wishes
تبریگ گفتن tabrîk goftan تبریگ گفتن
tabrîk 'arz k.

to be born تولد يافتن tavallod yâftan (متولد بودن (شدن) متولد بودن motovalled b., sh.
this year امسال emsâl last year پارسال pârsâl
the day after tomorrow پسفردا

within (time) درظرف dar zarf-égâhî گاھی sometimes visit دیدن رفتن dídan raftan mazhab مذمب dîn مذمب rûz-é-tavallod روز تولد

the day before yesterday پريروز parîrûz new (year) نو nôu last night ديشب dishab the night before last يريشب parishab

## بخوانيد:

## عيد نوروز

در ایران بزرگترین عبد سال عبد نوروز است که روز اول سال -به اول فروردین ماه می افتد. در این روز هرکسی که ایرانی باشد – مسلمان عیسوی زردشتی و مهودی – عید میگیرد. باید هرکس در این روز بزرگ برای دیدن دوستان برود و اول میروند بدیدن پدر و مادر. وقتی که کسی بدیدن ما میاید ما باید با ایشان شیرینی و چای بخوریم. اگرکسی دوستان زیاد دارد که نمیتواند در این روز اول بدیدن هریکی برود پس سعی میکند در ظرف سنزده روز اول سال (از اول تا روز سیزدهم فروردین ماه) دیدن برود. گاهی اتفاق می افتد که کسی را نمیتوانیم ببینیم که در شهر یا شهرستان دیگر منزل میکند ــ پس یک کارت کوچک میفرستیم که رویش نوشته شده است «برای سال نو آقا وخانم (اسم) باقا وخانم (اسم) تبریک عرض میکنند».

I.

# تمرین جواب بفرمائید:

- ۱ بزرگترین عید در تقویم ایرانی کی اتفاق می افتد؟
  - اسم ابن عيد چيست ؟
- روز اول سال ایرانی در تقویم عیسوی کی اتفاق می افتد؟
  - مسلمان هستيد شما؟ دينتان جيست؟

۵ جناب عالی کی متولد شدید؟

ع بنده روز ۲۰م ژویه سال ۱۹۳۳ عیسوی متولد شدم. از جناب عالی بزرگتر یا جوانتر هستم؟

۷ چای بیشتر دوست دارید یا قهوه ؟

۸ در تقویم ایرانی روز اول فصل تابستان کی اتفاق می افتد؟

۹ در سال چند ماه هست؟

١٠ امسال سال كبيسه است؟ و يارسال؟

## II. Complete:

امروز شنبه است. فردا (۱) — است و دیروز (۲) — بود. همچنین پریروز (۳) — بود. از امروز تایک هفته (۱) — خواهد بود. پسفردا (۵) — خواهد بود.

III.

# 

#### IV. Write in full words:

بتهام حرفها بنويسيد:

#### LESSON 27

Wordbuilding. Suffixes—continued.

We often use a suffix د- - ن الله - - ث after vowels,  $-g^2$  after vocalic • h) to form adjectives from other parts of speech:

mellat nation shâhenshâh emperor شاهنشاه îrân Iran اران eragh Iraq عراق arab an Arab عرب

mazhab religion مذهب jomhûr republic جهور shab evening, شب night

mellî national مل shâhenshâhî imperial شاهنشاهي îrânî Iranian ارانی erâghî Iraqi عراقي arabî Arab, Arabic, عربي Arabian mazhabî religious مذهبي jomhûrî republican حبوري shabî evening's, شبي nocturnal مفتگی hafte week هفتگی haftegî هفتگی dohaftegî bi-weekly درهفتگی harhaftegî هرهفتگی

Adjectives and Adverbs are usually identical in form: bad(ly) بر bad; good/well خوب khûb; better بيد behtar; but certain adverbs, usually of Manner or Time, borrowed from Arabic, keep their Arabic form ending in the curious orthography or -an.

This is not a Persian letter; it is an Arabic double letter, and all we need to know about it is that it is pronounced -an, short a even if there is an | alef there. Learn these essential ones, derived from adjectives:

J. avval first ma'amûlî general sâbegh former سابق

avvalan firstly | ma'amûlan generally sâbeghan formerly سايقاً

مثل mesl-é similar to مثلا masalan for example مثل fe'l fact امل fe'lan in fact اصل asl origin اصلا aslan actually خصوص khosûsî special خصوص

Persian abstract nouns in • -\ell and \( \sigma \) -at come from Arabic nouns ending in \( \cdot \) (• dotted and pronounced -at). In some cases the Persians have dropped the dots \( \sigma \) and pronounce • -\ell :

Arabic دننه daf'at a time, Persian دننه daf'é and in others they have kept the pronunciation -at and re-spelled with:

Arabic ندرت nodrat rarity, Persian ندرت nodrat
The original Arabic forms also make adverbs as above :

nodratan rarely ندرة daf'atan suddenly دفعة

Remember to keep the -an short in all these adverbs.

The adverb for at last, finally is the Arabic بالاخره belakheré (medial ا alef short here).

Compound Nouns and Adjectives are often formed by running together a noun + a Present Stem:

```
khosh pleasant خوشگو khoshgû sweet-tongued, full of
                   sweet speech
S gû
         sav
  bad bad بد
               بدگو badgû evil-mouthed, slanderous
 gû sav گو
 sar head سر باز sarbâz soldier (one who risks his
 باز baz game head, his life)
 âsh stew آش
 siew }
پر paz cook }
                 âshpaz cook آشپز
 sar head سرکش sarkash obstinate, stubborn, head-
                  strong (used especially of horses)
kash کش
         pull
```

Nouns of agent are formed by adding the suffix کر -kar, - گار -gar, کار -kâr, or گار

בرو derôu harvest : געפלת derôugar harvester

آهنگر ahan iron : آهنگر âhangar ironmonger, blacksmith

کار kâr work : کار kârgar worker, workman

أموزگار : âmûkhtan to teach آموزگار : âmûkhtan primary teacher

The prefix -> ham- (cognate with Latin "cum") gives us the additional meaning "together":

کاری کردن: kâr work کاری کردن hamkârî k. co-operate.

مايه sâyê shade, shadow : هسايه hamsâyê neighbour (i.e. one who shares the same shade).

جنين chonin like this: هجنين hamchonin just like this, likewise, also, as well (as).

مه ham- is also used as an intensifying prefix in:

hamîn this very one, the same

ان hamân that very one, the same هينجا hamînjâ just here هانجا hamânjâ just there

Its meaning as a word is (a) emphatic, as above:

من هم ميروم ولى شها بايد بمانيد

manham mîravam valî shomâ bâyad bémânîd I'm going, but you've got to stay

با این صندوق کمنه چه کار کنم؟ کدآم؟ این هم

bâ în sandûgh-é-kohné ché kâr konam? kodâm? înham What am I to do with this old box? Which one? This one. (b) already:

They had already left. anhâ ham rafté bûdand آنها هم رفته بودند (c) also :

I'm going too. man ham mîravam من هم ميروم All. There are various ways of translating all into Persian:

- (a) meaning " everything " : مش hamé chîz or همه چيز hamash.
- (b) meaning "the whole of ": مام tamâm-é-.
- (c) meaning "all" in the plural: \* hamé-yé-.
- (d) meaning "each" in the singular : مر har or han é (with no ézâfé).

# Examples of these:

(a) He forgot everything

همه چیز را فراموش کرد

hamé chîz râ farâmûsh kard

(b) The whole world loves peace

تمام دنیا صلح دوست دارد tamâm-é-donyâ solh dûst dârad (c) All the boys were sorry to see you go

hamé-yé-pesarân mota'assef bûdand ké mîravîd

(d) Each of these workmen complained

Time—continued. Time after the half hour is given by using 4 be "to" followed by the next hour, as in English:

yek rob' bé do یک ربم به دو

المشت دقيقه به جهار hasht daghîghê bê chahâr

Or else we can use the phrase از . . . گذشته az . . . gozashté " past . . . " with the last hour, as in English :

4.50 پنجاه دقیقه از چهار گذشته panjāḥ daghīghé az chahâr gozashté

This construction is used equally often for time before the half hour:

6.07 هفت دقیقه از شش گذشته haft daghîghé az shesh gozashté 8.15 ربع ساعت از هشت كذشته rob' sâ'at az hasht gozashté

Arabic Plurals. We do not propose to spend long describing the complications of Arabic plurals which occur in Persian. As we have said before, it is always acceptable to suffix a Persian plural in b--hâ or b--an to an Arabic word borrowed into Persian. Here, briefly, are some of the commonest Arabic plural forms used in Persian:

 (b) medial -1-- â- (sometimes also an initial | short a):

vaght وقت	time	ôughât اوقات
taraf طرف	direction	atrâf اطراف
masjed مسجد	mosque	masâjed مساجد
manzel منزل	house	manâzel منازل
shakhs شخص	fellow	ashkhâs اشخاص
khatar خطر	danger	akhtâr اخطار
sabab سبب	cause,	asbâb, which اسباب
	reason	means " luggage "

(c) medial - - -û-:

(d) ين $-\hat{i}n$ :

mosâferîn مسافرين mosâfer traveller مسافر

Orthographic Signs. We learned, as long ago as Lesson 11, the last of the letters used to write Persian. We have also, later in the book, met the sign: hamzé:

mîgû'îd you say anhâ'îkê ميگونيد those who

There are a few other signs, none of them in common use; you should always rely on reading and writing Persian without their help.

First, three short vowels. They are:

(a) e or é, called kasré. It is placed just below the consonant it follows:

mesl similar سِن senn age

The only time you are likely to see it used is to mark an

*èzâfé* after a final consonant (the é we marked with an \* asterisk in the texts earlier in this book):

مثل شاه mesl-é-shâh like an emperor منزل بزرگ این شخص manzel-é-bozorg-é-în shakhs this fellow's big house

Even so, it is rarely used.

(b) (This and the signs following are even more rarely used.)

short a, called fathé and written just over the consonant it follows:

zan woman زَن man I مَرد zan woman

(c) o, called zammé, and written just over the consonant which it follows:

pol bridge پئل por full کنل pol bridge

(d) or called  $sok\hat{u}n$ , or jazm. It shows that the consonant over which it is written has no vowel pronounced after it, but runs straight into the next consonant:

mard man مرد kashtî boat کشتی

which it is placed is doubled in pronunciation. It is not important to write the *tashdîd*, but it is most important to pronunce the consonant doubled, as in Italian:

am-mâ but ننا ban-nâ builder بنا am-nâ builder

تمرين

I. Form adjectives from:

۱ ملت ۲ عراق ۳ شهردار ۲ جمهور ۵ خورشید

# II. Give the Persian for:

- 1. bi-weekly
- 2. monthly
- 3. former, formerly
- 4. finally
- 5. for example

- 6. in fact
- 7. worker
- 8. slanderous
- 9. a fruit-seller
- 10. a greengrocer

ترجمه بفرمائيد:

#### III.

- 1. This man is both rich and happy.
- 2. The Prophet teaches us to love God.§
- 3. They travelled in the same bus as I.
- 4. Persia is a land full of beautiful buildings.
- 5. Now that you can speak Persian, you must visit Iran and read as much as (هر چه قدر harchéghadr) you can—newspapers, books, anything (= everything).
- § God—Arabic غدا allah, Persian نخدا khoda. The Persian is more common in everyday speech.
- IV. Give the two plural forms for each of these important words. They are not all Arabic words:

V. These are Arabic plurals of words familiar to you. Give (a) the singular, (b) the meaning, singular and plural, of:

۱ اوقات ۲ مسافرین ۳ فصول ۶ اسباب ۵ اخطار

VI. Write in the signs kasré, fathé, zammé, and tashdîd:

۱ طلوع آفتاب چیز قشنگی است
 ۲ روز نامهٔ امروز رسیده است؟
 ۳ نمیفهمم چرا نمیتوانید زبان فارسی را بخوانید و بنویسید
 ۴ شهر اصفهان پر از عمارتهای نزرگ و مهم است

# KEY TO EXERCISES

#### Lesson 1

- V. (a) That builder with that water.
  - (b) That water with that bread.
  - (c) with the builder.
  - (d) water with bread.

# Lesson 2

سنش (d) نانش (c) نانش (d) سنش (d) سنش

V. (a) his stew.

(c) water, his water.

(b) their bread.

(d) water with his bread.

### Lesson 3

II. (a) مام (b) نامش (c) شامان (d) نامش (e) مام (f) آمان (f)

V. (a) The builder came with that water.

- (b) my age, his age, our age, their age.
- (c) my water, his water, our water.
- (d) his name, their name.
- (e) my dinner, his dinner, our dinner, their dinner.

#### Lesson 4

- میاید (b) میام all. (a)
- V. (a) I am coming to that water.
  - (b) He is coming to this water.
  - (c) water with this stew.
  - (d) This builder is coming, that builder came.

#### Lesson 5

- (a) شام سرد است (b) این نان بد است (c) آن مرد ایرانی نیست (d) آب نیست (c) شام سرد است (II. (a)
- III. (a) I have a horse.(b) I saw a horse.(c) This horse isn't Iranian.(d) That is a door.

  - (e) This bread is bad.
  - (f) I am coming with you as far as the door.
  - (g) The water is cold.

# Lesson 6

- با اسب دوستم آمدم (b) این مرد دزد است (II. (a) با اسب دوستم
  - زن این مرد ایرانی نیست (d) روی آن مرد را دیدم (c) باران میام (e)
- III. (a) I have some cold water.
  - (b) That horse isn't bad.
  - (c) Why did he come?
  - (d) This horse's name is Rustam.
  - (e) This man's friend came.

# Lesson 7

- در در دست چپ است (b) هر سه از شا را در شهر دیدم (II. (a) هر سه از شا را در شهر
  - در شیشه من آب نیست (c) (d) هر شبشه آب دارد

- III. (a) On the left hand is my mother and on the right hand is my father.
  - (b) I am giving you everything.
  - (c) Our brother comes to town every month.

#### Lesson 8

من باوچه میدهم؟ (a)

(a) باو نان و کره میدهم (b) من باو چه میدهم؟ (c) او بکار میاید؟ بله میاید (d) باو بول دارد؟ نه ولی کار دارد

III. (a) He came to work.

- (b) This flower is in the water.
- (c) Everyone comes to town on horseback.
- (d) I have no money.

#### Lesson 9

 (a)
 من خوب میخوام

 (b)
 آن جا بد است دارد؟

 (c)
 او چه چیز در دست دارد؟

 آب گرم نیست
 (d)

 من خوب ميخوام (a) II.

III. (a) I have a request. (c) This man is very good.

(b) Tomorrow is Friday. (d) This is a good place.

(e) The sum of three and four is seven.

# LESSON 10

يول نخواست .1 III.

سه تا شیشه آب گرم دارد و دو تا آب سرد دارد . 2

باو نان و کره دادم .3

در دست سه تا نان دارد . 4

III. 1. Six and four are ten. 3. Everybody came.

2. I have three flowers. 4. He wanted warm water.

### Lesson 11

(iv) • • (d) (e) consonant. (f) 2

من قبل از شها میایم .2 دوستم از پل آمد .1 نان و آب دارد .4 من باو چه چیز دادم؟ هیچ چیز .3 دوستم از پل آمد .III. 1

- VI. 1. I gave you these three loaves of bread and that water.
  - 2. I have none other than this (nothing but this).
  - 3. A friend came from Tehran.
  - 4. In this town the water isn't good on there is no good water.
  - 5. He will come to the bridge with some money tomorrow.

#### Lesson 12

ما در شهر یک دوست با اسبش دیدیم .2 شما بآن مرد نان دادید .II. 1.

ایشان نان با کره خوردند .4 او نان و آب گرفت .3

باو هرچيز دادم .5

- V. 1. I saw a horse in town.
  - 2. We ate fish with water and bread and butter.
  - 3. That man got three horses in town.
  - 4. They ate and drank that water and bread.
  - 5. The carpenter took some money.
  - 6. We saw a horse.
  - 7. I gave some money to the man.
  - 8. This horse drank some water.
  - 9. I saw everything in Tehran.
  - 10. They saw two people.

# Lesson 12a

گرفتم (1) آگرفتم گرفتید (2)

V.

دير و ز من بدفتر دير رفتم. هوا در تهران خيلي گرم بود و اتوبوس دير آمد. شب من بمنزل رفتم و شام خوردم.

### Lesson 13

- پدرم بمن پول نداد .I. 1.
  - من پول را نداد .2
  - ديروز برادرم هينج جا نرفت .3
  - باو هيچ چيز ندادم .4
  - مادرم بخواهرم هيتج چيز نداد .5
  - دخترش هينج وقت بدفتر نيامد .6

  - مینچ کس نرفت .7 دیروز پدرش بدفتر دیر آمد .8
  - آن اتوبوس هينج وقت زود ُنميايد .9
  - اتوبوس را ديدم. ما اتوبوس ديديم .10
- II. 1. I gave him nothing.
  - 2. Did you come by bus?
  - 3. The weather wasn't very warm.
  - 4. I have never been in this town.
  - 5. He went to Iran.
  - 6. I saw nobody in town.
  - 7. You didn't eat dinner.
  - 8. I never took his money.

- 9. His daughter and his brother were in town yesterday.
- 10. They didn't see this thing anywhere.
- ما نخوردیم من نخوردم ما نگرفتیم من نگرفتم (1) IV. (1) شیا نخوردید شیا نگرفتید شیا نگرفتید (2)

  - ایشان نخوردند او نخورد ایشان نگرفتند او نگرفت (3) آنها نخوردند آن نخورد آنها نگرفتند آن نگرفت
  - هيچ جا .3 هيچ وقت .2 هيچ کدام . V. 1. ميچ جايز .4

### Lesson 13a

ديروز هيىچ كس نيامد؟ . IV. 1.

- ديدم كجا رفت. كجا رفت؟ آنجا رفت.
- چطور منزل رفتند؟ اینطور رفتند؛ با اتوبوس و با تاکسی .3
- من هين وقت در تهران نبودم. شها آنجا بوديد؟ .4
- شم كدام أتوبوس را گرفتيد؟ اين يكي يا آن يكي؟ .5
- من این شخص را در دفتر هیچوقت ندیدم. من آنجا هیچوقت .6 هيجكس نديدم
- برادرش در آن وقت کجا بود؟ برادرش در آن وقت در تهران بود .7

# Lesson 14

- زنان (زنها) يرندگان سكها درختها باغها قلمها ا مدادها - (منازل) منزلها - كتابها - آقا يان - بچهها - اتوبوسها -ماشيئها - خطها - كربهما - اسها - اين سكها - آن كربهما -
- شيا نامه نوشتيد؟ . 2 اين آقايان اينجا آمدند . II. 1. نه ما نامه ننوشتیم. ایشان نامه بدوستان نوشتند
  - در منزلها (منازل) رادرا مان بودند في 4. کتابها را بيدران دادند .3
  - دوستانمان بتهران رفتند و بما نامهها نوشتند .5
  - يسرها خيلي بد نوشتند .7 اين سگها خيلي بد بود (-ند) .6

- در باغهامان درختها بود .8
- باغها خیلی نزرگ بود. منزلها خیلی کوچک بود .9
- خط این نامهها خیلی بد بود. .10

نخواندي. شيا آنها را خوانديد؟ نه نامهها را نخوانديم

شيا نامه ها را خوانديد؟ كدام نامه ها را؟ اينها. . III. 1.

- كتامام خيلي زرگ نبود .2
- او قلم كاغذ و مداد بدفتر رد . 3
- ديروز يك نامه نوشتم. كدام نامه؟ اين يكي .4
- این بچهها در آمدند. چطور آمدند با اتوبوس یا با ماشن؟ .5
- این منزلها بزرگ بود ولی آنها کوچک بود .6
- در درختها پرندگان را دیدم .7
- این پسرهای بد دم آن سگ را کشیدند .8
- با یک مداد بزرگ یک خط کشید .9
- سگش و گربه ما در باغمان رفت (رفتند) .10
- ننوشت .4 رفت .3 آمد (-ند) 2. بود .1 بود
  - نوشتند .8 نبود .7 رفتند .6 بود .9 آمدند؛ آمد .10 نوشت .9

VII. 1. é. 2. yé. 3. é. 4. é. 5. yé.

VIII. 1. unwritten. 2. ن- 3. unwritten.

5. unwritten. -ى 4.

# Lesson 14a

بود .5 بودند؟ .4 بود .3 بودید .2 بودند .1 III.

فردا من زود در دفتر هستم .IV. 1.

- ديروز دو آقا در منزل داشتم .2
- من يول را نداشتم شها داشتيد؟ . 3
- این اطاق چهار پنجره و یک در دارد. پنجره ها هریکی شش تا شیشه دارد . 4
- اینها کتابهای نیست. کجاست؟ آنها را هیچ جا ندیدم .5

این مرد دوستم نیست .1. V. آن زن مادر خوبی نیست. .2 من خيلي وقت اينجا نيسم .3

آب نست؟ 4. ایرانی نیستید .5

## Lesson 15

چىزى .9 صندلي .12 بچهاي or بچه .11 مردي .10

آن مردرا دیروز دیدم. در دست کتابی داشت .II. 1

- كدام اتوبوس دير آمد؟ نديدم گاهي اتوبوسها ديراست، .2 گاهي زود.
- امروز آقائي منزل آمد . 3
- شها از میز چیزی برداشتید؟ نه آقا هیچ چیز ندیدم و نگرفتم . 4
- این کیست؟ برادرش نیست کسی دیگر است .5
- V. 1. Is there anybody else in this house? No sir, there is nobody else.
  - 2. Why does this man have no friends? This man is a bad man and nobody is his friend.
  - 3. I went nowhere else from the office yesterday.
  - 4. Why didn't you go home? I hadn't any time.
  - 5. Have you got a good book? What book? I haven't got any book.

# Lesson 15a

خود .5 خود .4 خود .3 خود، -يشان .2 خود

از باغش گذشتم .2 از باغم گذشت .4 از باغ خودش گذشت .1 II. از

از باغ خودم گذشتم .3 از باغش گذشت .5

#### Lesson 16

- این عمارت \* رزگ \* قشنگ مال \* بانک \* ملی، ایران است . ۱. ۱.
  - زبان \* فارسى آسان نيست . 2
  - 3.
  - حسن \* شوفر شوفر \* خوبى است 4.
  - 5.
  - در خیابانهای \* مختلف \* شهر \* تهران ماشینهای \* زیاد هست .6
  - این اسب مال \* کیست؟ مال \* برادر \* این آموزگار است .7
  - سيب گلابي و گيلاس ميوهٔ خوب است .8
  - یک یرندهٔ بزرگ در درخت دیدم .9

10.

- آن ماشین مال کیست؟ کدام؟ آن یکی .III. 1
  - آن ماشین وزیر فرهنگ است .2
  - تهران یایتخت اران است. شهری رزگ است . 3
  - در ایران زیاد شهرهای بزرگ نیست ولی دههای کوچک زیاد هست . 4
  - چون ماشین از خیابان های اصفهان گذشت چیزی قابل توجه دیدیم .5

IV.	Apposition	Noun + Adjective	Possession
	۱ حسن * شوفر	۲ این عمارت * بزرگ چیست ۳ اسب * قشنگ است ۵ نقاشی، قشنگ	۳ اسب * این آقا ٤ چراغهای * این ماشین

# Lesson 16a

خسته ام .I. 1

مينويسيد؟ .2

ميرويد؟ .3

نميخواند .4

خوشحاليم .5		مير وند .6	
خوشحاليم .5 آمدند .7		کی میبیند؟ .8	
ه میگذرد؟ .9	<del>-</del>	ميدهيد .10	
ميروم .II. 1	ميبيني 2.	کی میگذرد؟ .3	ميخورند .4
مينويسد 5.	ميخوانيد 6.	7. میبیند	
مير ود .8	ميخوابند .9	میگیرد .10	
میگیرم (1) میگیر	میگیر یم	میبیم میبینید	ميبينيم
میگیر بد (2)	میگیر ید	مينينيد	ميبينيذ
میگیرد میگیرد	ميگيرند	ميبيند	ميبينند
میگیرد } <sup>(0)</sup>	میگیرد	ميبينه	ميبيند
تازه ام .1 .IV	بلدند .2	كجائيد؟ .3	
در آبند .4	خسته ايم .5		

نميخواند .5 ميگذرد .4 مينويسيم .3 ميرود .2 ميبافند .1

# Lesson 17

- روی میز یک بشقاب یک کارد و یک فنجان هست . I. 1
  - چه نزدیک میز است؟ . 2
  - در این منزل سه نفر هست. بیرون منزل یک باغ هست و توی .3 باغ گلهاست
  - شها کلید را در در دیدید؟ بله در در بود ولی آن را بیرون کشیدم. .4
  - برای ناهار شها هر روز چه میگیرید؟ .5
  - شها با ناشتائی قهوه میخورید؟ در انگلستان چای از فنجان .6 میخورند ولی در ایران از لیوان میخوریم
  - کی پشت در ایستاد؟ .7
  - ديروز دوست خودم را با پدرش ديدم .8
  - این را بهلوی شیا گفت؟ .9
  - نه بدوستان خودش بیر ون گفت .10
  - داخل این منزل اثاثه زیاد هست .11
  - منزل او نزدیک سفارت واقع است .12

- اثاثه او از چه عبارت است؟ از صندلی میز و تخت خواب .13
- او بدون من (بسي من) سركار ميرود ولى جاى كارش خيلي نزديك .14
- بخاری نردیک درب واقع است؟ بله پشت درب واقع است . 15
- طرف (بطرف) مسجّد رفتم .16
- برادرم در بانک نشسته بود. در دست یک کتاب داشت ا 17.
- هیچوقت کلاه بر سر ندارم .18
- کی نقش را روی آن دیوار نزدیک پنجره زیر چراغ گذاشت؟ ۱۹.
- ما قالیچه را از روی قالی برداشتیم و زیر ان پول خود را گذاشتیم .20
- این اطاق شیاست و این تخت حواب نزرگ برای شاست . 21
- . غ در ميان \* اين بچهها . 4 . ف از زبر \* زمن . 3 . yé توى \* اطاق . 2 . II. 2
  - . و بطرف \* تهران . 8 . ازيشت \* درب . 7 . بدون \* اضافه . 6 .

### Lesson 17a

- آرد و آب و نمک را میامیزد و توی فنجان میریزد. .II. 1. این را روی آتش میپزد.
  - نزدیک در میایستد .2
  - آتش خوب میسوزد .3
  - شیا چه میکنید؟ آن را میفروشید؟ .4
  - آن مرد را میشناسم. بپسر من زبان فارسی میاموزد .5
  - جرا این کاغذ را بیر ون انداخت؟ خودم آن را پرداختم .6
  - نقش را روی دیوار میاویزد .7
  - کی ماشین خودش را فروخت؟ .8
- میشناسم .3 میسوزد .2 میپردازید .1 III.
- مي ايستم .4

- مياورند 7. مياندازند 6. مييزد 5.
- ميفروشيم .8

# Lesson 18

- ایشان میگویند .I. 1
- كى مبايد؟ .2
- مينهائيم .3

مىفزايد .4

- ميفرمائيد؟ 5.
- ميگويد 6. نمي آزمايد .9

نميگونيم .7

نمينهايد .8

میگوئید .5

### Lesson 18a

I. (a) 
$$\mathcal{F} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{r}$$

I. (a) 
$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{T} \times \mathbf{Y}$$
 (b)  $1 \cdot = \mathbf{T} / \mathbf{Y} + \mathbf{F} / \mathbf{Y}$  (c)  $\mathbf{f} \times \mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{F} / \mathbf{Y}$ 

# Lesson 19

بكنند 4.

نکشد .8

بپرسید .3 نیایم .2 بروم .1 .1 برسید .5 بخوریم .6 بگوید .5 نیزد .10 بپردازیم .9

 II. 1. نورسید
 3. نپرسید
 4. نکند

 نپردازیم
 9. نئویسیم
 7. نئویسیم

 بپردازیم
 8. بخوریم
 8. بخوریم

 بیام
 8. بخوریم

بېزد .10

بش نگوئید .3 بش گفتم .2 چرا ندیدیدش؟ .1

تويش نرود .5 رويش بود .4

VI. 1. Why didn't you do it?

3. Don't tell him.

2. I said to him.

4. It was on that.

5. Let him not go into the room.

## Lesson 19a

II. 1. نمیدانم که اسمش چیستآیا گفت که کجا میروم؟2. آیا گفت که کجا میروم؟

- بش بگوئید رود .3
- حسن گفت که کسی را در ده .4 دیدم ولی میدانم که کیست
- ش بگوئید که دستهایش را بشوید .5
- III. 1. (a) I asked him "Why are you here?"
  - (b) I asked him why he was here/there.
  - 2. (a) He commanded them "Come".
    - (b) He commanded them to come.
  - 3. (a) The man thought "This fellow is mad".
    - (b) The man thought that the fellow was mad.
  - 4. (a) He said "It is late".
    - (b) He said that it was late.
  - 5. (a) Today we learned "Some years ago Iran was the centre of civilization".
    - (b) Today we learned that some years ago Iran was the centre of civilization.

# Lesson 20

- او میتواند فارسی بنویسد؟ بله متیواند .1. 1.
  - او میخواهد این را بیاموزد؟ نه نمیخواهد . 2.
  - شا كجا ميخواهيد بنشينيد؟ . 3
  - دستها را نميتوانم بدون آب بشويم . 4
  - حرا محنواهد او منزل شيا را بسند؟ .5
  - هیچ کس نتوانست این را بمن بگوید .6
  - حالا شام ميخواهيد؟ . 7
  - خواست مخواید ولی نتوانست .8
  - ديروز خيلي مريض بود و هيچ چيز نتوانست بخورد ِ .9
  - شہا کی خواستید مارا ببینید؟ زود بیائیم؟ .10
- بنشيند .1. II.

- بدانيد؟ .3
- بشويم .2 بنشيند .1 ببينيم .5 بخوانم و بنويسم .4

- بى آب نتوانستم بشورم .2 خواست اينجا بنشيند .1 (III. (a در این کتاب نتوانستیم ببینیم . . . . . . . پس توانستم . . . . 4.
  - چه میخواهید بدانید؟ .3 (b)

# Lesson 20a

حرکت کرد .II. 1. من صحبت كنم؟ .3 حركت كند .2

شها كجا منزل ميكنيد؟ .5 شام را حاضر كنيد .4

زندگی کنم .3 بکنم .2 -اضر نکنند .5 صبت نکنم .4 بشرم .1 III.

از من سیب خواست . IV. 1.

از من يرسيد كه ساعت جيست . 2

ازش بیرسید که کجا منزل میکند .3

يول نخواهيد .4

برای میوهٔ خودش زیاد یول خواست . 5

# LESSON 21

سبكتر - سبكترين 2. بیشتر با هوش – با هوش تر ین .I. 1 داغتر - داغتر . 3 كتر - كترين .4

روشنتر – روشنترین .5

در این شهر دولت مند ترین مرد کیست؟ . II. 1.

على دولت مند است ولى شيا خيلي بيشتر دولتمند هستيد .2

فصل یازدهم از فصل سوم خیلی بیشتر قابل توجه است . 3

كدام كتاب مهمترين كتاب بود؟ . 4

مردم يس از جوانان مهتر ميدانند .5

من میتوانم تندتر ازشا راه بروم .6

میتوانید یکی ارزانتر از این من بدهید؟ .7

همیشه زودتر از شها بد فتر میرسد؛ .8 آیا ماشین سریع تر از مال شها دارد؟

چرا گربه همیشه در (روی) راحت ترین صندلی مینشیند؟ .9

### Lesson 21a

کتابی که خریدید بمن بدهید .1. 1.

بجائی که هیچ کس نمیداند رفت .2

كاشيكارى ايرانى كه خريديم قشنگ است .3

مردیکه این را گفت داناست . 4

آقائی که آمدند یدر حسن هستند .5

جائی که .2 زبانیکه .II. 1.

ساعتبائىكە 3.

آمائكه .5 صندليكه .4

III. 1. Give me the book you bought.

2. He went to a place which nobody knows.

3. The Iranian mosaic we bought is beautiful.

4. The man who said this is wise.

5. The gentleman who came is Hassan's father.

1. The language I am speaking is Persian.

2. The place he went to is Esfahan.

3. You didn't tell me the time when I can come.

4. I saw the chair which is broken.

5. The ones you saw are the best of the lot.

سم بکه بنجره را شکست کحاست؟ . IV. 1.

هرحا که بروید سحاره خواهدیود . 2

امیر تیمور گورکان بدترین پادشاهی بود که پادشاهی کرد .3

آن نقشی را که شما گفتید قشنگ است فروختند .4

مردیکه چنین کاری میکند دوستم نیست .5

# Lesson 22

کتابی که توی آن این را پیدا کردید کجاست؟ . I. 1

منزليكه من آنجا منزل ميكنم باغي قشنك دارد .2

وقتیکه ایران مرکز تمدن بود خیلی غنی بود . 3

- مدرسه ایکه پسرتان آنجا میرود اسمش چیست؟ . 4. آن یکی که آنجا زبانهای روسی و ترکی میاموزند؟
- کشتی که او ازش در نامهٔ خودش صحبت کرد دیروز به بندر .5 شاه رسید
- آبى كه ما ميخوريم از چاه ميكشند .6
- آن منزل مال کیست؟ مال آقائی است که پسرم را درس میاموزد .7
- کدام یکی را بیشتر دوست دارید آن یکی را که بشیا نشان دادم یا .8 آن یکی را که پیدا کردید؟
- میل دارم از آقائی که آنقدر زحمت برای این کار کشیدند تشکر کنم .9
- آیا در پای خودش دردی دارد آنجائی که میخی بود که ما دیروز 10. پیدا کردیم و بیرون آوردیم ؟

#### Lesson 22a

- منزل ميكردم ميشناخيم .1. 1.
- ميرفتيد ديدم؟ 2.

طول ميكشيد 3.

میخوردید - زنگ زدند؟ .4

- گرفت و رفت .5
- شها کار کردن توی باغ را دوست دارید؟ .II. 1.
  - يختن آسان است .2
  - از خواندن زبان ایتالیائی خیلی لذت میرد .3
  - در ماه آینده اتوبوسی که از تبریز میاید یک ساعت دیرتر میرسد .4

# Lesson 23

- بنده فردا پهلوی جناب عالی نمیایم چون جناب عالی منزل تشریف .II. 1. ندارید
  - عرض كردم بنده نميتوانم بيايم . 3 بايشان چه فرموديد؟ . 2
  - این آقا تشریف آوردند و خواهش فرمودند بنده بایشان شهارهٔ تلفن .4 جنا بعالی را بدهم
  - برای شام جناب عالی چه میل میفرمائید بنده حاضر کنم؟ . 5.

- شتر که در دورهٔ گذشته مهمترین حیوان در بیابان بود حالا برای .III. 1. مسافرت کردن آنقدر مهم نیست
  - صندلی که تعمیر کرد بیاورید .2
  - شما در کشتی که او ازش صحبت میکرد مسافرت کردید؟ . 3
  - این نقشکیه دیروز خریدند یکی از قشنگترین نقشهائی است .4 که من دیدهام
  - در آن موقع در شیراز که از شهرهای ایران است منزل داشت .5

# Lesson 23a

I.

# على بابا

وقتیکه علی بابا تمام زرها را جمع کرد از خدا میخواست که چند و زنه و یک کیسه با خودش آو رده بود تا بتواند زرها را و زن کند. بعد از اینکه قدری راجع بان فکر کرد بنظرش رسید عاقلانه است که بمنزل برادرزن خود برود تا و زنهها را بگیرد. مصطفی (-برادرزنش-) مایل بود کیسه و و زنهها را باو بدهد و (داد) و علی رفت تا زر خود را بکشد.

چند ساعت بعد پس از آنکه علی کشیدن زر خود را تمام کرد با اسبابش منزل مصطفی برگشت. با و جود یکه مصطفی از همین خانواده علی بود او را دوست نداشت. بعد از آنکه کیسه و زر را از علی گرفت گفت: «علی قبل از آنکه بر وید بمن بگوئید که زرتان کجاست بنظرم شما مردی خیلی دولتمند میآئید چون هنوز قدری زر در ته این کیسه هست. تمام زرها مال پادشاه است و هر چند من برادر و دوستتان باشم آتچه میدانم میگویم مگر اینکه شما زر خودتان را نشان بدهید.

- II. 1. (a) آمده باشم
  - 2. (a) نوشته باشد
  - رسیده باشد (a) ...
  - 4. (a) نيامده باشيم
  - اجازه فرموده باشید (a) .5.

- (b) بيام
- بنویسد (b)
- رسد (b)
- (b) نيائيم
- اجازه بفرمائید (b)

Colloquial	Elevated	Lesson 24 I.	
â mîram nîtûnand mîad/mîâd hé nîdûnestam oné mîgîd ? dê bâyad bêram nîkonand	<ul> <li>nàmîtavánand</li> <li>zûd mîâyad</li> <li>bâshad</li> <li>nàmîdânestam</li> <li>nàkonad</li> <li>ché mîgû'îd ?</li> <li>bandé bâyad bèravam</li> <li>nàmîkonand</li> </ul>	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.	
		9. <b>10.</b>	

II.	1.		کنم	صحبت	ارسی	وب فا	ميتسوانم خ
	2.						ميخواهم
	<b>3.</b>		Ŋ	))	))	))	بايد
	4.		n	))	n	))	شايد
	<b>5.</b>		n	))	))	))	بايست
	6.			))		))	ميخواستم
	7.			1)		))	ميتوانستم
	8.		n	y	n	"	شايست ٔ
	9.	باشم	کرده	9	))	))	بايد
1	<b>0.</b>	»	n	))	))	))	شايد

- III. 1. This man killed himself.
  - 2. Do you speak Persian yourself?
  - 3. We must arrange it ourselves.
  - 4. Perhaps they have gone themselves (he...himself).
  - 5. Don't deceive yourself.

#### Lesson 24a

I. 1. But when he opened his teeth, so that he might get the bone seen in the water, the bone fell into the water and was lost-and instead of having got a second bone, he lost the one he had.

II. 1. عيايد

- باشد .2
- تشم بف آورديد 3.

غرید .5 باز بکند (کند) .4

#### Lesson 25

خواهیم داشت .1. 1.

نخواهد شد .3 خواهد گذاشت .2

خواهد رفت .5 تشریف خواهند آورد .4

II. 1. بودی 2. دستت

خودت 3.

روى .5 بگو! .4

. نروي .6

زود باش! .7

نكن! .8

ميخواهي .10 چه ميگوئي؟ .9

III.

#### Colloquial Elevated bòkon 1. bekon nèmîtûnam 2. nàmîtavânam 3. begozárîm bògozârîm 4. bègû'îd bègîd 5. nàravîd nàrîd

- نباید (نمیشود) در مسجد صحبت کرد .IV. 1. نباید
  - ميتوان هميشه سعى كرد ولى نميشود گفت كه آيا متيوان موفق شد . 2
  - نمیتوان گفت کی این کار را کرد .3
  - نبایست دروغ گفت .4
  - عاى «من» جه با يد گفت؟ بايد گفت «بنده» .5

# TEST PAPER—VERBS

- - ۱ خریدم ۲ نرفتید ۳ کی بود؟ ۶ تافت/تابید ۵ آمیخت
  - (a) کرده ام ۲ گرفته ام ۳ خوانده ام ۶ شمرده ام ۵ پخته ام (b)
     کرده بودم ۲ گرفته بودم ۳ خوانده بودم ۶ شمرده بودم
    - ۵ بخته بودم
    - (c) ممرده باشم ۲ گرفته باشم ۳ خوانده باشم ۶ شمرده باشم ۲ گرفته باشم ۵ پخته باشم

- D. 1. until I come; so that I should come.
  - 2. we shall see; we wish to see.
  - 3. if he goes; if he had gone.
  - 4. I must say; one must say.
  - 5. I may be mistaken; I may have been mistaken.
  - 6. he lost; he was lost.
  - 7. I have seen; I am seen.
  - 8. don't!; that you may not do.
  - 9. they couldn't come; one couldn't come.
  - 10. past, passed; put, placed.

#### LESSON 26

- I. 1. پاسبان .3 دربان .4 باغبان .4

   5. عربستان .5 مهانخانه .6 عربستان .7 دانشگاه .8 باشگاه .1 آشپزی .9 بستگی .11 باغبانی .10 آشپزی .1 آشپزی .1 گفتگو/گفت و گو .14 جست وجو/جستجو .13
- II. 1. connexion, -gî abstract.
  - 2. university, -gâh place.
  - 3. to do the painting, -? abstract of activity made into a Compound Verb.
  - 4. show, -esh abstract.
  - 5. to be registered, -1 abstract, Passive Compound Verb.
- نقاشی شدن .2 آشیزی کردن .III. 1.
  - گفتگو. گفتگو كردن. بين ايشان گفتگو شد .3
  - ياسبان. شهر باني. آمدو رفت/آمدوشد . 4
  - نمایشگاه. کتابخانه. شهرستان .5

### Lesson 26a

یکشنه II. 1.

شنبه .4 ينجشنبه .3 جمعه .2

دو شنه .5

ساعت دو . i . III

ساعت نه و بیست و پنج دقیقه .2

ساعت يك و ربع .3

ساعت سه و بيست دقيقه .1 IV.

ساعت جهارو هفده دقیقه .2

ساعت هنت و نیم ، 3

روز بیستم آبان (ابان) ماه هزار و سیصد و سی و پنج .4

روز سیم دی ماه هزار و سیصد و سی و شش 5.

### Lesson 27

خورشيدي .5 جمهوري .4 شهرداري .3 عراقي .2 ملي .1

۔ کارگر .7

بدگو .8 سبزی فروش .10 میوه فروش .9

این مرد هم دولت مند هم خوشحال است .III. 1.

حضرت پیغامبر بما دوست داشتن خدا را میاموزد (میاموزد خدا را .2 دوست داشته باشیم)

در همان اتوپوس با من مسافرت کردند .3

اران کشوریست بر از عمارتهای قشنگ .4

حالا که میتوانید فارسی صحبت کنید باید ایران را دیدن کنید و .5 هر قدر که میتوانید روز نامه و کتاب و هرچیز دیگر بخوانید

منزلها منازل . 3 ميوه ها ميوه جات . 2 مساجد مسجدها . 1 IV. 1

شخصها اشخاص .6 سبها اسباب .5 روزنامهها روزنامهجات .4

حروف حرفها .9 أطرفها اطراف .8 ظروف ظرفها .7

V. 1. (a) وقت (b) time, times.

2. (a) مسافر (b) travellers, travellers.

3. (a) فصل (b) chapter/season, chapters/seasons.
 4. (a) سبب (b) cause/reason, luggage.
 5. (a) خطر (b) danger, dangers.
 VI. 1. خطر ۱.
 ۲ روزنامهٔ اِمروز رِسِیده اَست؟
 ۳ نمیفهممم چرا نمیتوانند زبان فارسی را بخوانند و بنویسند ۱.
 3. شهر اِصفهان پُر از عیارتهای بُزُرگ و مهیم آست ۱.

### VOCABULARIES

In the following Vocabularies, all numbers and most proper names have been omitted, as they can be found through the Index. The abbreviations mean: لا. كردن kardan (and forming a passive with غيدن shodan); b. بودن dâshtan; d. دادن dâshtan; dd. دادن dâshtan; ksh. كشيدن kashîdan—which are the verbs used to form Compound Verbs from the words given, thus: "كشيدن ejâzé permission dd." means that أجازه اجازه وjâzé means permission, and that أجازه وأعداد ejâzé dâdan means to give permission, to permit.

#### Persian-English

آب âb water o havâ climate آپ و هوا blue ہے آہے آئش أ âtesh fire ettefâgh oftâdan اتفاق افتادن happen otôbûs bus اتو بوس asâsé furniture الْدَتْه ejazė permission dd. äkher, -în last آخرين edâré office اداره artesh army ارتش ârd flour آرد arzân cheap ارزان az from, than, by آزمودن أazmûdan test آسان *âsân* easy asb horse asbâb luggage اسباب eslâm Islam اسلام esm name âsh stew آثن paz cook آشيز eshtebâh error k. اشتاه asl origin an actually -an otâgh room اطاق

atrâf directions اطراف âftâb sun آفتاب آفریدن âfarîdan create oftâdan fall افتادن آما âghâ Mr., gentleman agar if اگر albatté certainly الته eltefât kindness التفات Ll ammâ but *âmadan* come emrûz today امروز emsâl this year emshab tonight امشب amûkhtan teach آموختن amîkhtan mix آميختن omid hope اميد vâr hopeful- امیدوار نآ ân that, it ânjâ there انجا andâkhtan throw انداخت antour like that آنطور آنقدر anghadr so (much) L'I anhâ those, they A he, she âvardan bring آوردن ôughất times اوقات J. avval first

an firstly -an avîkhtan hang آو نحتن ahesté slowly ahammîyat importance âhan iron آهن LT aya whether أيستادن îstâdan stand, stop ishân they ایشان ایل tribe ایل in this این inja here اينجا آينده âyandê next intôur like this اینطور inghadr so (much) اینقدر b bâ with inké although- با اینکه bâd wind باد bârân rain باران باز bâz open k. bâzî game بازى bâshgâh club باشگاه bâ'es cause باعث إلغ bâgh garden bâftan weave بافتن belakheré lastly بالاخره bâhûsh intelligent باهوش ايد bâyad must bėjā-yė instead of جاي bachché child بچه bokhârî stove نخاري

bakhshîdan excuse نخشيدن ಸ bad bad bedûn-é without مدون -înké unless بدون اینکه barâdar brother وادر barâ-ye for راي inké so that, because واي اينكه bar khâstan arise ر خاستن ענט bordan carry barf snow رف وق bargh lightning, electricity barg leaf رگ bar gashtan return ر گشتن e berenj rice, brass borîdan cut ريدن bozorg big, great زرگ bas enough بس bastegî d. bâ depend on بستكي bastan close, tie بستن besyâr very بسيار boshghâb plate بشقاب ba'ad , -an afterwards بعد بعداً az after (preposition) - بعد از -az înké after (conjunction) az zohr afternoon بعد از ظهر ba'azî some بعضي بقيه baghîyé remainder ىلد balad knowledgeable

boland tall, -k. raise بلند balé yes بله banna builder bandar port بندر bandé (slave) I بنده bénazar â. appear نگاه bongâh establishment ه bû smell k. يودن bûdan be bé to به 4 baha price bahâr Spring ہار behtar better ہر in best ہترین bî without بے يابان bîâbân desert bîchâré poor بيجاره پدار bîdâr awake k. يرون bîrûn-é outside -k. throw out bîshtar more بيشر în most- بيشرين bîfahm stupid بيفهم bîmârestân hospital بيارستان بىن bêin-é between bînî nose بيي på foot يا pâdeshâh king بادشاه pârché cloth يارچه pârsâl last year يارسال

pâsbân watchman ياسبان pâk clean ياك pâ-yé-takht capital يايتخت (city) pâ'îz Autumn يائىز پائىن pâ'în low, below pokhtan cook نحتن pedar father پدر pazîroftan receive بذيرفتن (guests) por full k. pardâkhtan pay رداختن pardé curtain وده porsîdan ask رسيدن parandé bird رنده ريدن parîdan jump, fly ת ת פנ parîrûz day before yesterday بريشب parîshab night before last pezeshk doctor رشک pas then يس post post بست pesar boy, son يسر pasfardâ day after يسفردا tomorrow posht-é behind بشت bâm roof- بشت بام pashm wool بشم مل مل pol bridge

pambé cotton پنیه panjeré window پنجره panîr cheese پنر pûl money يول pûshîdan wear يوشيدن pahlû-yé at, " chez " نت paln wide k. pîâdé on foot بياده pîch screw پیج پیچیدن pîchîdan turn, wrap پيدا *pêidâ k*. find pîr-é old يىر pîsh-é before بيثر، پیشهاد pîshnehâd k. suggest پيودن pêimûdan measure pêighâm message ييغام bar prophet - ييغامبر tâ piece, until, so that tâbestân Summer تابستان تاييدن tâbîdan twist, shine târîkh history تاریخ târîk dark تاریک تابیدن . tâftan v تافتن tâzé new تازه تریک tabrîk congratulations takht-é-khâb bed تخت خواب tokhm seed تخم e-morgh egg- تخم مرغ tarbîyat culture تربيت تر حد j tarjomé translation k.

tarsîdan fear ترسيدن tashakkor k. thank tasâdof (road) تصادف accident تعجب ta'ajjob surprise, -k. be surprised تمسر ta'amîr k. repair taghyîr k. alter تغيير tofang rifle تفنگ taghdîm gift تقدع taghvîm calendar تقوع tamâm complete k. tambr stamp عبر غرين tamrîn exercise k. tambal lazy تنبل tang tight تنگ tanhâ alone تنيا to thou تو tavânestan be able توجه tavajjoh attention k. tûfân storm توفان tavallod birth yâftan تولد يافتن toman = 10 rials (1s.) توى tû-yé inside ن tah end, bottom sânîyé a second ثانيه jâ place جا jodâ separate k. jadîd new جدید joz besides جز

jostan seek جستن jelôu-yé in front of jam' together, sum, -k. collect jomhûr republic jens kind, sort جنس jang war جنگ jonûb South جنوب javâb answer dd. javân young جوان jâhân world جہان châi tea جای chap left-hand چپ cherâ why جرا cherâgh lamp charm leather چرم cheshm eye جشم chétoûr how جطور \_ chéghadr how much حقدر many chégûné what sort of جگونه chand, -tâ how چند چندتا many, a few changâl fork چنگال chûb wood چوب chûn as چون che what chîdan arrange چيدن chîz thing چىز ماضر hâzer ready k.

hâlâ now حالا harakat k. move off حرکت harf letter (of the alphabet) horûf letters حروف hess feeling k. مات hesâb reckoning k. hefz k. protect hoghûgh wages حقوق haghîghat truth حقيقت hammâm bath حام hêivân animal حيوان *khârej خارج khârejé* foreign khâstan rise خاستن khâk dust خاك خالی khâlî empty k. khâmûsh out (lights) خاموش khânom Mrs., Miss, lady خانم khânevâdé family خانواده khâné house خانه خجالت khejâlat ksh. be ashamed khodâ God خدا افظ -hâfez goodbye خدست khedmat service k. خراب kharâb destroyed k. خریدن kharîdan buy khasté tired خسته khoshk dry خشک

khosûs special خصوص an specially- خصوصاً khatt line, writing خط khatar danger خطر خنديدن khandîdan laugh khâb sleep خواب خوابيدن khâbîdan sleep khûb good خوب khordan eat, drink خوردن khâstan want خواستن khândan read خواندن khâhar sister خواهر khâhesh request k. khod own, self خود khorshîd sun خو رشید daftar office دفتر khosh, -hâl happy خوش خوشمال خامان khîâbân street khêir no خبر khêilî very خيل dâkhel-é inside داخل دادن dâdan give dâshtan have داشتن dâgh hot (food) داغ dânâ wise دانا dânestan know دانستن دختر dokhtar girl, daughter dar door در در dar in -â, enter davîdan run دويدن dar âvardan produce در آوردن dar zarf-é within در ظرف

dar mîân-é among در میان darbâr court دريار derakht tree درخت dard pain درد درس dars lesson, k. study, dd, teach dorost correct, k. arrange دروغ dorûgh a lie دريا daryâ sea dozd thief دزد نزديدن dozdîdan steal dast hand دست -mâl handkerchief dasht a plain دشت daf'é a time دفیه daghîghé a minute دقيقه د کان dokkân shop del heart دل dom tail, dam-é near, close دم dandân tooth دندان donyâ world دنیا davâ medicine دوا dûr far دور dôuré space of time دوره dûst friend, d. like dôulat government دولت déh village ده

ديدن dîdan see raftan visit- دیدن رفتن dîr late در dîrûz yesterday دروز dîshab last night ديشب dîgar more, other دیگر dîn religion دين dînâr 1/100 rial دينار dîvâr wall ديوار dîvâné mad ديوانه râjé' bé concerning راجم به râhat comfortable راحت râst right راست râzî satisfied k. rândan drive اه râh road e-âhan railway- راه آهن raftan walk- راه رفتن rob' quarter ربع rasándan }bring up rasanîdan رسانيدن رسيدن rasîdan reach, arrive raftâr behaviour رفتار raftan go رفتن roftan sweep رفتن raghs dance 3. rang colour رنگ rû face rûd. -khâné river rûz day روز

nâmé newspaper روزنامه rôushan bright, alight k. rû-yê upon ريال  $\hat{rial} = \text{approx. } 1\frac{1}{4}\text{d.}$ rîkhtan pour ra'îs director رئيس زبان zabân tongue, language zahmat trouble, -ksh. take trouble زدن zadan strike zar gold زر zard yellow زرد zemestân Winter زمستان زمن zamîn ground ن zan woman j zendegî life k. zang bell زنگ zadan ring- زنگ زدن zûd early, soon, quick(ly) زياد zîâd very much, too (much) زيا zîbâ beautiful zîr-é under زر sâbegh former سابق an formerly- سابقاً sâkhtan make sâ'at hour, clock, watch ال sâl year ايه sâyé shadow sabab reason سبب

sabz green سر sabzé grass سره sabok thin سک sakht hard سخت ~ sar head -bâz soldier سے باز sard cold سرد sarî' fast سريع sa'î k. try سعى sefârat embassy sefîd white سفيد sag dog سگ salâm 'alêikom good-سلام عليكم morning senn age سن sangîn heavy سنگن sûkhtan burn سوختن savâr mounted, aboard سوار sûzânîdan burn سوزانيدن sîâh black سياه sîb apple سيب e-zamînî potato- سيب زميني shâm dinner شام shâh king, emperor شاه enshâh emperor شاهنشاه shâyad perhaps شاید shab night شب shotor camel شتر shakhs person شخص أ- شخصي private shodan become شدن

sharâb wine شراب sherkat company شركت shorû' beginning k. شروع shostan wash shekâyat complaint k. shekastan break شكستان shol loose شل shomâ you شيا shomâré number شياره shomâl North شال shomordan count شمردن shenâkhtan know شناختن shahrbânî police شهر بانی shahrdarî municipality shahrestân county شهرستان shîrînî sweets شيريني shîshê glass شيشه sâbûn soap صابون sâheb owner صاحب sobh morning صبح . صبر sabr k. wait sohbat talk k. sedâ voice, -k. call صدا safhé page صفحه solh peace صلح sandalî chair صندلي sandûgh box taraf direction, -é towards tolû' sunrise k.

tôur manner طور tûl ksh. to last zarf pot ظرف zorûf pots ظروف zohr noon عاقلانه äghélâné wise, wiselv عاقلانه 'âlî excellent عالي ebârat az consisting عبارت از of ajîb strange عجيب arz petition k. عرض عزيز 'azîz dear, beloved 'asr evening عصر aks photograph عکس 'emarat building عارت avaz change k. عوض 'éid holiday عيد أعيسوى 'îsavî Christian 'êinak spectacles عينك غروب ghorûb sunset k. ghanî rich غنی gheir az other than غراز az înké except that غرازاينكه فارسي fârsî Persian language فايده fâyedé advantage farâmûsh k. forget فراموش ferâr k. escape فرار fardâ tomorrow فردا ferestâdan send فرستادن farsh carpet فرش forsat chance فرصت

farmûdan command فرمودن forûdgâh airport فرودگاه forûkhtan sell فروختن farhang education, فرهنگ vocabulary farîftan deceive فريفتن feshordan press فشردن fasl chapter, season فصل فصل fosûl pl. of فصول fe'l fact فعل an in fact, presentiv- فعلا ifekr thought k. فلان folân a certain fenjan cup فنجان fahmîdan understand فهميدن ghâbel-é worthy of قابل tavajjoh interesting- قابل توجه ghâshogh spoon قاشق ghâlî carpet قالي ché rug - قاليچه ghânûn law ghabl az before قبل از ghablan previously قبلا ghabl az zohr a.m. قبل از ظهر ghabûl k. accept ghadîm ancient ghermez red قرمز ghesmat share k. ghashang beautiful قشنگ ghoft lock k.

ghalam pen قا ghand lump sugar قند ghahvé coffee قبوه rang brown '- قبوه ای رنگ ghêichî scissors قيجي ghêimat price قيمت کار kâr work k. kârd knife کارد kâfî sufficient kâmel complete کامل an completely -an *kebrît* a match kâghaz paper کاغذ ketâb book کتاب -khâné library kesâfat dirt کثافت kesîf dirty کثیف koja where کجا kodâm which ? ن kardan do • S karé butter kas, -î person کس کسی koshtan kill کشتن kashtî boat کشتی keshvar country کشور kashîdan draw kafsh shoe کفش koll chief کل kelâs class کلاس kolâh hat کلاه

kalemé word kelîd key 7 kam little, -k. lessen komak help k. kanâr-é beside kûbîdan pound کو بیدن tâh short! کرتاه kachék small كرچك ل الله الله كوچه ku كوچه kûzé jug kûshesh attempt k. کو بیدن .kûftan v کوفتن kûh mountain ké that, who, which كوه .koh v كه kohné old 5 kî who? 5 kêi where? kîse bag kîf bag کیف gâv ox, cow گاو gah place sometimes کاهی gadâ beggar گذاردن gozârdan گذاردن gozâshtan Place gozarândan spend گذراندن time gozashtan pass گذشتن gerân expensive گران

gorbé cat گریه gardîdan become گردیدن gorosné hungry گرسته gereftan get, take گرفتن garm warm گرم گردیدن .gashtan v گشتن goftogû argument گفتگو goftan say گفتن gol flower, rose گل golâbî pear گلاہے gom k. lose گم ganjė cupboard گنجه gûsfand sheep گوسفند gûsh ear, -k. listen گوش gûsht meat گرشت gûshé corner گرشه gîlâs cherry گيلاس lâzem necessary, -d. need lebâs clothing لباس lezzat bordan az لذت ردن از enjoy loghât words لغات loghat word لغت lavâzem necessities لوازم lûlé tube لوله lîvân a glass ليوان ∟ mâ we mâdar mother مادر mâshîn car ماشين

سال mâl-é belonging to ماندن mândan remain سفه mâh moon, month mâhî fish مامي mota'assef sorry motashakker grateful متشكر motavalled born متولد . ⊯ mesl-é like mokhtalef various مختلف makhsûs special مخصوص an specially- مخصوصاً medâd pencil مداد madrasé school مدرسه modîr director مدر mazhab religion مذهب marâ me مرا mard man مرد mardom people mordan die مردن markaz centre مركز marg death مرگ marîz ill مريض mosafer traveller مسافر mosâferat k. travel masjed mosque moslem, mosalmân مسلم مسلمان Moslem mashregh East moshkel difficult ma'arûf well-known معروف mo'allem teacher

ma'lûm known معلوم ma'amûlî general ma'amûlan generally ma'anî meaning معني maghreb West مغرب mellat nation ملت magas a fly مگرر maleké queen ملك mellî national مل momken possible کی mamlakat country علكت سنوع mamnû' forbidden mamnûn grateful منون : man I manzel house, -k. live mûsh mouse موثي movaffagh successful môughé' moment موقع mehraban kind مير مان mohemm important سان mehmân guest در . dar mîân-é v درميان mîkh nail ميخ mêidân a square ميدان mîz table مىز mêil d. to like to do ميل mîvé fruit ميوه ناشتاني nâshtâ'î breakfast uâm name نام *nâmé* letter

نان nân bread nâhâr lunch ناهار natîjé result najjâr carpenter نجار nakhêir no نخر nazdîk-é near زدیک neshâtâvar pleasant نشاط آور ineshân dd. show نشان neshânî address نشانی neshastan sit نشستن nesf half نصف naghghâsh painter نقاش naghsh picture نقش noghré silver نقره negâh k. look نگاه nomré number عرف namak salt نحک namûdan show عودن نوروز nôurûz Iranian New Year neveshtan write نوشتن nôukar servant نوکر na no نه *nîz* also نىز nîm half نم va, o and vâghé' situated واقع var d. remove varzesh sport ورزش vezârat ministry وزارت

وزي vazîr minister وزير vazîr minister وزير vasîlé means وسيله vaşîlé means وقت vaght time وقت -îké when وقت -îké when ولا bar every هر المعامل المعا

المسف hamé every المسف hamé-yé all of المسف hamîshé always المسف hamîn this same
المسن المسف hanîn this same
المسن المسف hanîz . . . nà- not yet

المسلم havâ air, weather المسلم -pêimâ aeroplane
المسلم المسلم hîch no, none
المسلم yâ or
المسلم yâ d . remember
المسلم yakh ice
المسلم yekî a, one
المسلم yavâsh slow(ly)

## ENGLISH-PERSIAN

Note: The words given here in Persian are transliterated, in Persian alphabetical order, in the Persian-English part.

about راجع به
accept قبول کردن
تصادف accident
actually 'فعلا
address نشانی
advantage فايده
aeroplane هوأبيا
after(wards) مد
بعد از (اینکه) after
بعد از ظهر noon—
age سن
air هوا
فرودگاه port—
alight k. روشن
all ماه؛ همة
alone تنها
also نیز ؛ هم
although با اینکه
always هيشه
در میان among
ancient قدم
and,
animal حيوان
answer dd. جواب
===== · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

بنظر آمدن appear apple سيب چيدن arrange رسيدن arrive چون as خجالت کشیدن از be ashamed of يرسيدن؛ خواستن ask at يهلوي attention k. ترجه يائىز autumn awake k. سدار يد bad کیسه – کیف bag مانک bank حمام bath پودن be زيا؛ قشنگ beautiful رای اینکه because شدن become تخت خواب bed قبل از (اینکه) before شروع .beginning k یشت behind زنگ bell belonging to JL

کنار beside جز s---مبترین best better ~ بىن between ىزرگ big يرنده bird تولد birth ساه black آہے blue کشتی boat کتاب book متولد born bottom 4 صندو ق box یس boy نان bread ئىكسىن break ناشتائی fast --ىل bridge روشن bright آوردن bring ارادر brother قهوه ای رنگ brown بنا builder عمارت building سوختن burn اتو بوس bus اما؛ ولي but کرہ butter

خريدن buy از by تقويم calendar صدا کردن call شتر camel توانستن can ماشین car نجار carpenter فرش carpet ردن carry باعث cause گر به cat البته certainly a certain فلان صندل chair فرصت chance عوض change k. فصل chapter

chapter ارزان

cheap ارزان

cheese پنیر

cherry گیلاس

chief ک

child بپه

Christian عیسوی

class کلاس

class پاک داول داول داول ک

بستن close يارچه cloth لباس clothing باشگاه club قهوه coffee سرد cold جمع کردن collect رنگ colour Tمدن come راحت comfortable فرمودن command شرکت company شكايت .complaint k کامل complete کاملا ایا \_\_\_ا تىر يىك congratulations عبارت از consisting of صحبت conversation آشيز ؛ يختن cook گوشه corner درست .correct k ينبه cotton شمردن count كشور ؛ مملكت country شهرستان county گاو cow آفر بدن create تربیت culture فنجان cup ررده curtain

ر یدن cut dance k. رقص خطر danger تاریک dark دختر daughter روز day گران؛ عزیز dear مرگ death فريفتن deceive بستگی داشتن با depend on بيابان desert مردن die مشكل difficult شام dinner طرف direction رئیس director مدیر کثافت dirt کثیف ۷— کردن do یزشک doctor سگ dog در door کشیدن draw خو ردن drink راندن drive خشک dry خاک dust أكوش ear زود early

مشرق East آسان easy خوردن eat فرهنگ education تخم مرغ egg electricity رق سفارت embassy empty k. خالی لذت ردن از enjoy بس enough در آمدن داخل شدن فرار کردن escape هر ؛ همه every عالي excellent except for ج خشيدن excuse exercise k. نعر يخ گران expensive چشم eye رو face فعل fact فملا ً —in fall افتادن خانواده family دور far بدر father ترسیدن fear feeling k. حس

کی a few پیدا کردن find آتش fire first اول اولاً ال-ماهي fish flour J.T گل flower ر يدن fly مگس a fly یا foot رای for منوع forbidden خارج foreign فراموش كردن forget جنگال fork سابق former سابقاً الا--دوست friend from il جلوی in front of fruit appe full k. اثاثه furniture بازی . game *k* garden إباغ معمول general -- lv معمولاً gentleman آتا گرفتن get

هدیه – تقدیمی gift دختر girl دادن give شیشه glass a glass ليوان رفتن go خدا God زر gold خوب good خدا حافظ bye-سلام عليكم morning وركت government سبزه grass منون grateful متشكر سىز green زمن ground ميان guest نصف half نیم دست hand دستال kerchief-آو نختن hang happen اتفاق افتادن خوشحال happy سخت hard کلاہ hat داشتن have او he سر head

دل heart سنگن heavy help k. کک here اينجا high بلند تاریخ history زدن hit عيد holiday امید hope امیدوار ful ---اسب horse بيارستان hospital داغ hot ساعت hour خانه؛ منزل house جطور how -- much چند؛ چقدر many – گرسنه hungry من؛ بنده I ice 🗲 مريض ill أهميت importance مهم important در in أفزودن increase in order to تا برای اینکه داخل inside in spite of بارجود

instead of بحاي باهوش intelligent قابل توجه interesting آهن iron اسلام Islam آن it کوزہ jug يريدن jump aم just کلید key كشتن kill مهر بان kind التفات ness جنس؛ طور a kind جور شاه؛ يادشاه king کارد knife دانستن؛ شناختن know معلوم known معروف well-known خانم lady کو چه lane جراغ lamp زبان language آخر ؛ آخرين last بالاخره lv-طول کشیدن to last در late خندیدن laugh قانون law

تنبل lazy رگئ leaf اچرم leather چپ left-hand درس lesson حرف letter a lie دروغ زندگی .life *k* مثل like دوست داشتن to like خط line گوش کردن listen کوچک little کے a little قفل .lock k الله long نگاه کردن look at المستن look for شل loose گم کردن lose يائن low اسباب luggage ناهار lunch ديوانه mad کریت match مرا me معنی meaning means وسيله پيمودن measure Meat گوشت

medicine درا پینام message وزير minister وزارت ministry دقیقه minute خانم Miss mistake k. اشتاه آميختن mix موقع moment یول money ماه, month, moon بیشتر more صبح morning مسلم Moslem مسجد mosque بیشترین most مادر mother که؛ کوه mountain موش mouse حرکت کردن move off Mr. آقا خانم .Mrs باید must ميخ nail نام؛ اسم name ملت nation —al , near زدىك

necessary لازم necessities لوازم لازم داشتن need neighbour هسایه هرگز ؛ هیجوقت never تازه؛ جدید new روزنامه newspaper آينده next شب night نه؛ خير؛ نخير؛ هيچ no ظهر noon شال North منوز . . . نه not yet حالا now مره؛ شاره number دنتر ؛ اداره office کهنه؛ يىر old a one چي open k. باز یا or دیگر other خاموش (lights) خاموش بىر ون outside خود own صاحب owner صفحه page درد pain نقاش painter كاغذ paper گذشتن pass

برداختن pay صلح peace قلم pen مداد pencil مردم people شاید perhaps permission dd. اجازه فارسى Persian language شخص person عکس photograph نقش picture جا place a plain دشت بشقاب plate i pleasant نشاط آور اصل point شہر بانی police بيجاره poor بندر port مکن possible پست post ظرف pot سیب زمینی potato ریختن pour فشردن press ما؛ قيمت price شخصی private در آوردن produce يينامر prophet صفظ .protect k گذاشتن put

گفتگر quarrel quarter ربع ملکه queen quick(ly) زود راه آهن railway اران rain بلند کردن raise رسدن reach خواندن read ready k. حاضر reason ----يذرفتن (guests) يذرفتن reckoning k. حساب قرمز red دین؛ مذهب religion ماندن remain بقيه remainder یاد داشتن remember ور داشتن remove repair k. تعمر حہور republic خواهش .request k iresult نتيجه ر گشتن return بر نج rice راست right زنگ زدن ring رخاستن rise رود؛ رودخانه river road يشت بام roof

اطاق room نمودن نشان دادن کل rose تاليچه rug نقره silver در بدن run خواهر sister تمکئ salt نشستن sit satisfied k. راضي واقع situated گفتن sav خواب خوابيدن مدرسه school قیجی scissors يواش (ly) يواش پیچ: پیچیدن screw smell k. بر دریا sea رف snow اینطور so فصل season — much اینقدر many a second ثانه دىدن see تا؛ برای اینکه that — تخم seed سے باز soldier خود self بعضى some فروختن sell گاهی times— فرستادن send يسر son جدا .separate k زود soon نوکر servant متأسف sorry service k. خدمت جنس؛ طور sort سابه shadow حرف sound share k. قسمت جنوب South she . خصوص special گرسفند sheep خصوصاً ١٧--تانتن shine عنک spectacles کفش shoe Spend (time) گذراندن د کان shop قاشق spoon کرتاه short ورزش sport

مهار spring آموختن teach ميدان square معلم er تمبر stamp Tزمودن test ايستادن stand از than اىستگاه station thanks k. تشكر دزدیدن steal آن؛ که that stew T یس then ایستادن stop Tنحا there ترفان storm انہا these مخاری stove ایشان؛ آنها they عجيب strange thief دزد خيابان street نانک thin درس خواندن study چىز thing بی فہم stupid فكركردن think موفق successful ابن this قند sugar those LT suggestion k. يشهاد انداختن throw تابستان summer بىرون كردن out -خو رشد؛ آفتاب sun بستن tie صلوع .rise *k* تنگ tight --set k. غروب رقت time surprise خسته tired تعجب be —d k. تعجب به to رفتن sweep امروز today شریی (sweet(s فردا tomorrow مىز table زبان tongue دم tail امشب tonight گرفتن take too (much) (many) زیاد صعبت کردن talk دندان tooth جای tea طرف towards

ترحه .translation k مسافرت. travel k. مسافر ler مسافر درخت tree tribe ايل زحت trouble take - ksh. سعر ؛ كوشش .try k لوله tube تافتن پیچیدن twist زر under فيمدن stand— بدون انیکه unless روی upon until ט مختلف various خیلی very ده village دیدن رفتن visit فرهنگ vocabulary صدا voice حقوق wages صبر کردن wait پیاده رفتن راه رفتن walk ديوار wall ميل داشتن خواستن want

حنگ war گرم warm شستن wash ساعت watch آب water we له يوشيدن wear weather | weave بافتن week هفته وزن weight مغرب West چه؛ چه چيز what کی؛ وقتیکه when کحا where Whether آیا کدام which سفيد white کی؛ که who جرا why بىن wide باد wind ينجره window شماب wine زمستان winter دانا wise با with در ظرف in -ہے ؛ بدرن out — زن woman

wood چوب wool پشم word لغت ؛ کلمه کار work *k.* کار world خیان؛ دنیا worthy of قابل wrap write نوشتن year سال yellow زرد yesterday دير وز you شما young جوان